To find out, we could plot more points. But how would we then connect *them*? The basic question still remains: How do we know for sure what the graph looks like between the points we plot? Calculus answers this question, as we will see in Chapter 4. Meanwhile we will have to settle for plotting points and connecting them as best we can.

Representing a Function Numerically

We have seen how a function may be represented algebraically by a formula (the area function) and visually by a graph (Example 2). Another way to represent a function is **numerically**, through a table of values. Numerical representations are often used by engineers and scientists. From an appropriate table of values, a graph of the function can be obtained using the method illustrated in Example 2, possibly with the aid of a computer. The graph consisting of only the points in the table is called a **scatterplot**.

EXAMPLE 3 Musical notes are pressure waves in the air. The data in Table 1.1 give recorded pressure displacement versus time in seconds of a musical note produced by a tuning fork. The table provides a representation of the pressure function over time. If we first make a scatterplot and then connect approximately the data points (t, p) from the table, we obtain the graph shown in Figure 1.6.

TABLE 1.1 Tuning fork data

Time	Pressure	Time	Pressure
0.00091	−0.080	0.00362	0.217
0.00108	0.200	0.00379	0.480
0.00125	0.480	0.00398	0.681
0.00144	0.693	0.00416	0.810
0.00162	0.816	0.00435	0.827
0.00180	0.844	0.00453	0.749
0.00198	0.771	0.00471	0.581
0.00216	0.603	0.00489	0.346
0.00234	0.368	0.00507	0.077
0.00253	0.099	0.00525	−0.164
0.00271	−0.141	0.00543	−0.320
0.00289	−0.309	0.00562	−0.354
0.00307	−0.348	0.00579	−0.248
0.00325	−0.248	0.00598	−0.035
0.00344	−0.041		

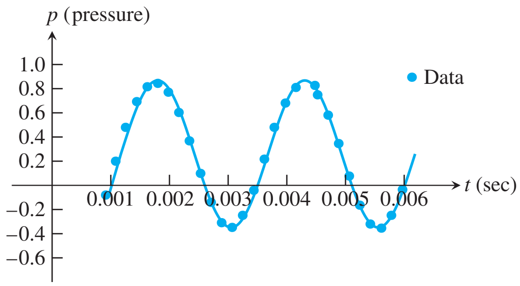


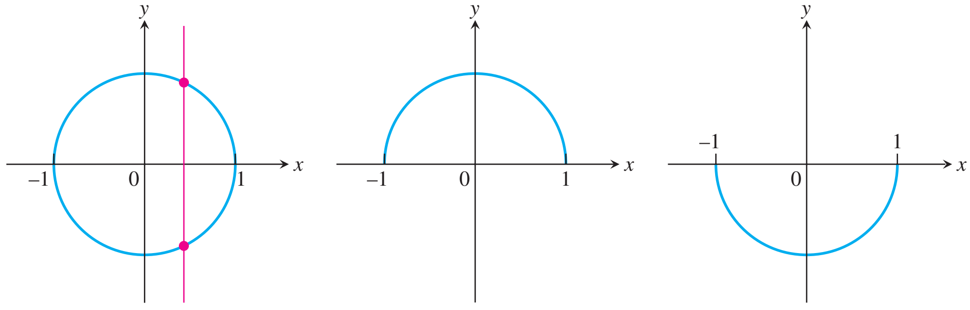
FIGURE 1.6 A smooth curve through the plotted points gives a graph of the pressure function represented by Table 1.1 (Example 3).

■

The Vertical Line Test for a Function

Not every curve in the coordinate plane can be the graph of a function. A function f can have only one value $f(x)$ for each x in its domain, so *no vertical* line can intersect the graph of a function more than once. If a is in the domain of the function f, then the vertical line $x = a$ will intersect the graph of f at the single point $(a, f(a))$.

A circle cannot be the graph of a function since some vertical lines intersect the circle twice. The circle in Figure 1.7a, however, does contain the graphs of *two* functions of x: the upper semicircle defined by the function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ and the lower semicircle defined by the function $g(x) = -\sqrt{1 - x^2}$ (Figures 1.7b and 1.7c).



(a) $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ (b) $y = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ (c) $y = -\sqrt{1 - x^2}$

FIGURE 1.7 (a) The circle is not the graph of a function; it fails the vertical line test. (b) The upper semicircle is the graph of a function $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2}$. (c) The lower semicircle is the graph of a function $g(x) = -\sqrt{1 - x^2}$.

Piecewise-Defined Functions

Sometimes a function is described by using different formulas on different parts of its domain. One example is the **absolute value function**

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x, & x \geq 0 \\ -x, & x < 0, \end{cases}$$

whose graph is given in Figure 1.8. The right-hand side of the equation means that the function equals x if $x \geq 0$, and equals $-x$ if $x < 0$. Here are some other examples.

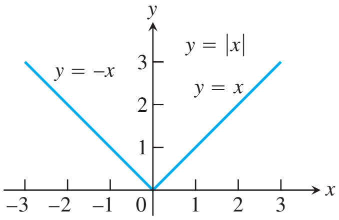


FIGURE 1.8 The absolute value function has domain $(-\infty, \infty)$ and range $[0, \infty)$.

EXAMPLE 4 The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x, & x < 0 \\ x^2, & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1, & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

is defined on the entire real line but has values given by different formulas depending on the position of x. The values of f are given by $y = -x$ when $x < 0$, $y = x^2$ when $0 \leq x \leq 1$, and $y = 1$ when $x > 1$. The function, however, is *just one function* whose domain is the entire set of real numbers (Figure 1.9). ■

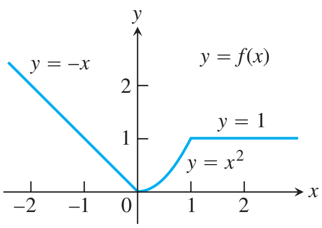


FIGURE 1.9 To graph the function $y = f(x)$ shown here, we apply different formulas to different parts of its domain (Example 4).

EXAMPLE 5 The function whose value at any number x is the *greatest integer less than or equal to* x is called the **greatest integer function** or the **integer floor function**. It is denoted $\lfloor x \rfloor$. Figure 1.10 shows the graph. Observe that

$$\begin{array}{llll} \lfloor 2.4 \rfloor = 2, & \lfloor 1.9 \rfloor = 1, & \lfloor 0 \rfloor = 0, & \lfloor -1.2 \rfloor = -2, \\ \lfloor 2 \rfloor = 2, & \lfloor 0.2 \rfloor = 0, & \lfloor -0.3 \rfloor = -1 & \lfloor -2 \rfloor = -2. \end{array}$$ ■

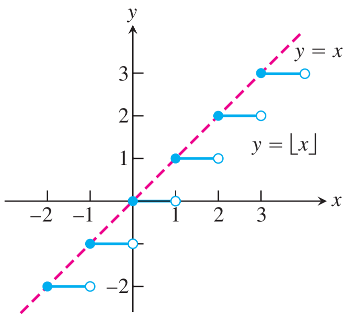


FIGURE 1.10 The graph of the greatest integer function $y = \lfloor x \rfloor$ lies on or below the line $y = x$, so it provides an integer floor for x (Example 5).

EXAMPLE 6 The function whose value at any number x is the *smallest integer greater than or equal to* x is called the **least integer function** or the **integer ceiling function**. It is denoted $\lceil x \rceil$. Figure 1.11 shows the graph. For positive values of x, this function might represent, for example, the cost of parking x hours in a parking lot which charges \$1 for each hour or part of an hour. ■

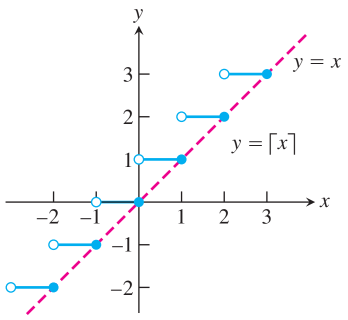


FIGURE 1.11 The graph of the least integer function $y = \lceil x \rceil$ lies on or above the line $y = x$, so it provides an integer ceiling for x (Example 6).

Increasing and Decreasing Functions

If the graph of a function *climbs* or *rises* as you move from left to right, we say that the function is *increasing*. If the graph *descends* or *falls* as you move from left to right, the function is *decreasing*.

> **DEFINITIONS** Let f be a function defined on an interval I and let x_1 and x_2 be any two points in I.
>
> **1.** If $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$ whenever $x_1 < x_2$, then f is said to be **increasing** on I.
>
> **2.** If $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$ whenever $x_1 < x_2$, then f is said to be **decreasing** on I.

It is important to realize that the definitions of increasing and decreasing functions must be satisfied for *every* pair of points x_1 and x_2 in I with $x_1 < x_2$. Because we use the inequality $<$ to compare the function values, instead of $\leq$, it is sometimes said that f is *strictly* increasing or decreasing on I. The interval I may be finite (also called bounded) or infinite (unbounded) and by definition never consists of a single point (Appendix 1).

EXAMPLE 7 The function graphed in Figure 1.9 is decreasing on $(-\infty, 0]$ and increasing on $[0, 1]$. The function is neither increasing nor decreasing on the interval $[1, \infty)$ because of the strict inequalities used to compare the function values in the definitions. ■

Even Functions and Odd Functions: Symmetry

The graphs of *even* and *odd* functions have characteristic symmetry properties.

> **DEFINITIONS** A function $y = f(x)$ is an
>
> **even function of x** if $f(-x) = f(x)$,
> **odd function of x** if $f(-x) = -f(x)$,
>
> for every x in the function's domain.

The names *even* and *odd* come from powers of x. If y is an even power of x, as in $y = x^2$ or $y = x^4$, it is an even function of x because $(-x)^2 = x^2$ and $(-x)^4 = x^4$. If y is an odd power of x, as in $y = x$ or $y = x^3$, it is an odd function of x because $(-x)^1 = -x$ and $(-x)^3 = -x^3$.

The graph of an even function is **symmetric about the *y*-axis**. Since $f(-x) = f(x)$, a point (x, y) lies on the graph if and only if the point $(-x, y)$ lies on the graph (Figure 1.12a). A reflection across the y-axis leaves the graph unchanged.

The graph of an odd function is **symmetric about the origin**. Since $f(-x) = -f(x)$, a point (x, y) lies on the graph if and only if the point $(-x, -y)$ lies on the graph (Figure 1.12b). Equivalently, a graph is symmetric about the origin if a rotation of 180° about the origin leaves the graph unchanged. Notice that the definitions imply that both x and $-x$ must be in the domain of f.

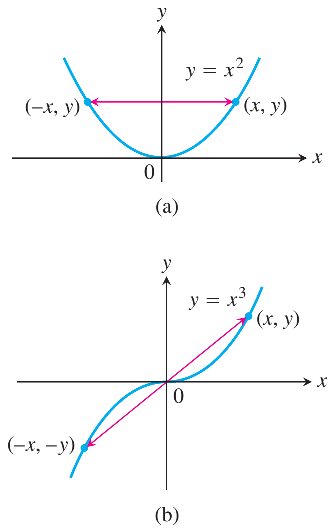


FIGURE 1.12 (a) The graph of $y = x^2$ (an even function) is symmetric about the y-axis. (b) The graph of $y = x^3$ (an odd function) is symmetric about the origin.

EXAMPLE 8

$f(x) = x^2$	Even function: $(-x)^2 = x^2$ for all x; symmetry about y-axis.
$f(x) = x^2 + 1$	Even function: $(-x)^2 + 1 = x^2 + 1$ for all x; symmetry about y-axis (Figure 1.13a).
$f(x) = x$	Odd function: $(-x) = -x$ for all x; symmetry about the origin.
$f(x) = x + 1$	Not odd: $f(-x) = -x + 1$, but $-f(x) = -x - 1$. The two are not equal. Not even: $(-x) + 1 \neq x + 1$ for all $x \neq 0$ (Figure 1.13b). ■

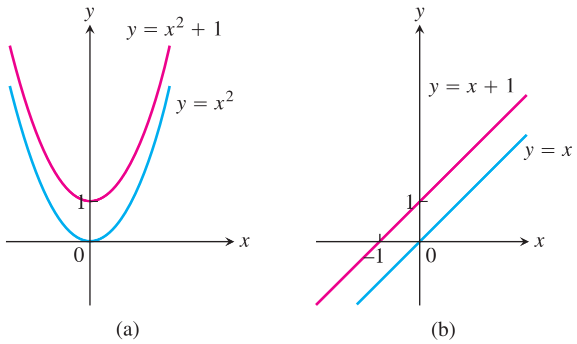


FIGURE 1.13 (a) When we add the constant term 1 to the function $y = x^2$, the resulting function $y = x^2 + 1$ is still even and its graph is still symmetric about the y-axis. (b) When we add the constant term 1 to the function $y = x$, the resulting function $y = x + 1$ is no longer odd. The symmetry about the origin is lost (Example 8).

Common Functions

A variety of important types of functions are frequently encountered in calculus. We identify and briefly describe them here.

Linear Functions A function of the form $f(x) = mx + b$, for constants m and b, is called a **linear function**. Figure 1.14a shows an array of lines $f(x) = mx$ where $b = 0$, so these lines pass through the origin. The function $f(x) = x$ where $m = 1$ and $b = 0$ is called the **identity function**. Constant functions result when the slope $m = 0$ (Figure 1.14b). A linear function with positive slope whose graph passes through the origin is called a *proportionality* relationship.

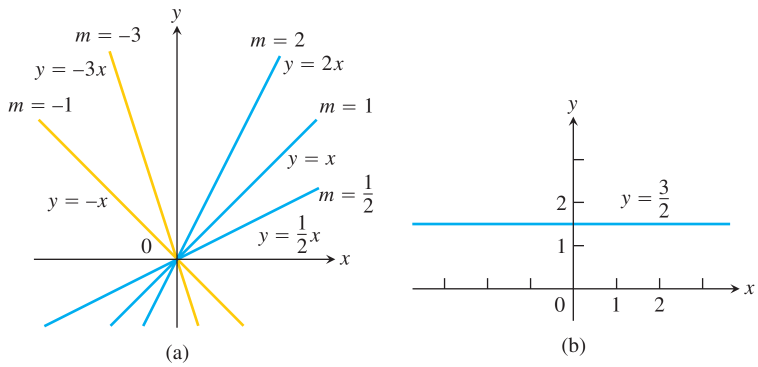


FIGURE 1.14 (a) Lines through the origin with slope m. (b) A constant function with slope $m = 0$.

> **DEFINITION** Two variables y and x are **proportional** (to one another) if one is always a constant multiple of the other; that is, if $y = kx$ for some nonzero constant k.

If the variable y is proportional to the reciprocal $1/x$, then sometimes it is said that y is **inversely proportional** to x (because $1/x$ is the multiplicative inverse of x).

Power Functions A function $f(x) = x^a$, where a is a constant, is called a **power function**. There are several important cases to consider.

(a) $a = n$, a positive integer.

The graphs of $f(x) = x^n$, for $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$, are displayed in Figure 1.15. These functions are defined for all real values of x. Notice that as the power n gets larger, the curves tend to flatten toward the x-axis on the interval $(-1, 1)$, and also rise more steeply for $|x| > 1$. Each curve passes through the point $(1, 1)$ and through the origin. The graphs of functions with even powers are symmetric about the y-axis; those with odd powers are symmetric about the origin. The even-powered functions are decreasing on the interval $(-\infty, 0]$ and increasing on $[0, \infty)$; the odd-powered functions are increasing over the entire real line $(-\infty, \infty)$.

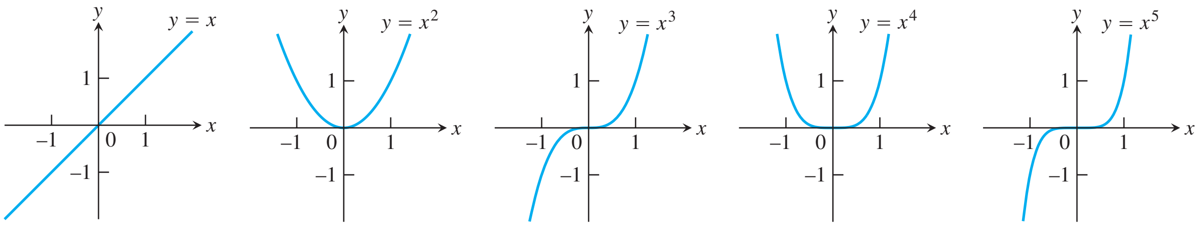


FIGURE 1.15 Graphs of $f(x) = x^n$, $n = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$, defined for $-\infty < x < \infty$.

(b) $a = -1$ or $a = -2$.

The graphs of the functions $f(x) = x^{-1} = 1/x$ and $g(x) = x^{-2} = 1/x^2$ are shown in Figure 1.16. Both functions are defined for all $x \neq 0$ (you can never divide by zero). The graph of $y = 1/x$ is the hyperbola $xy = 1$, which approaches the coordinate axes far from the origin. The graph of $y = 1/x^2$ also approaches the coordinate axes. The graph of the function f is symmetric about the origin; f is decreasing on the intervals $(-\infty, 0)$ and $(0, \infty)$. The graph of the function g is symmetric about the y-axis; g is increasing on $(-\infty, 0)$ and decreasing on $(0, \infty)$.

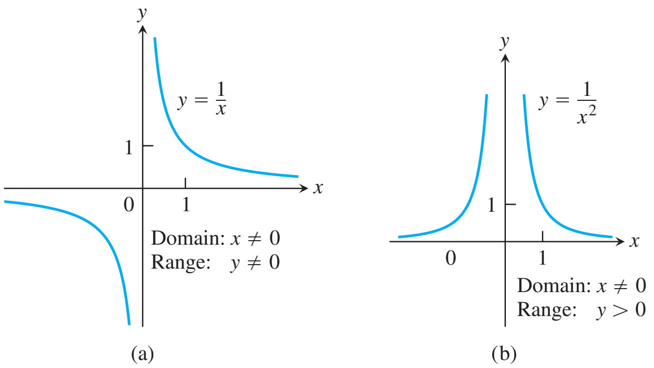


FIGURE 1.16 Graphs of the power functions $f(x) = x^a$ for part (a) $a = -1$ and for part (b) $a = -2$.

(c) $a = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{3}{2}$, and $\frac{2}{3}$.

The functions $f(x) = x^{1/2} = \sqrt{x}$ and $g(x) = x^{1/3} = \sqrt[3]{x}$ are the **square root** and **cube root** functions, respectively. The domain of the square root function is $[0, \infty)$, but the cube root function is defined for all real x. Their graphs are displayed in Figure 1.17 along with the graphs of $y = x^{3/2}$ and $y = x^{2/3}$. (Recall that $x^{3/2} = (x^{1/2})^3$ and $x^{2/3} = (x^{1/3})^2$.)

Polynomials A function p is a **polynomial** if

$$p(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where n is a nonnegative integer and the numbers $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are real constants (called the **coefficients** of the polynomial). All polynomials have domain $(-\infty, \infty)$. If the

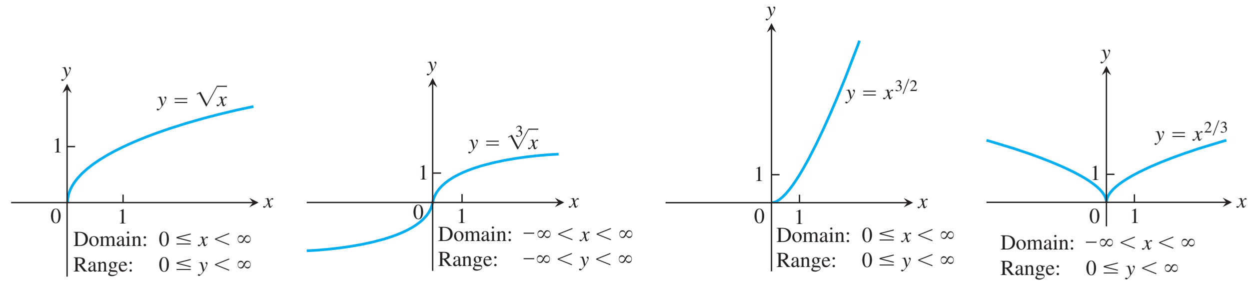


FIGURE 1.17 Graphs of the power functions $f(x) = x^a$ for $a = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{3}{2}$, and $\frac{2}{3}$.

leading coefficient $a_n \neq 0$ and $n > 0$, then n is called the **degree** of the polynomial. Linear functions with $m \neq 0$ are polynomials of degree 1. Polynomials of degree 2, usually written as $p(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, are called **quadratic functions**. Likewise, **cubic functions** are polynomials $p(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ of degree 3. Figure 1.18 shows the graphs of three polynomials. Techniques to graph polynomials are studied in Chapter 4.

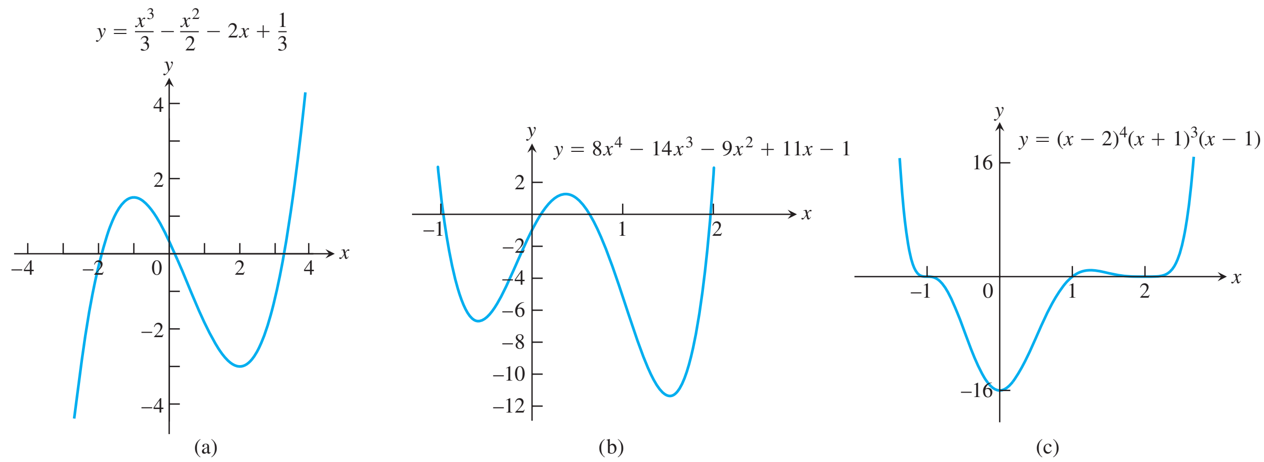


FIGURE 1.18 Graphs of three polynomial functions.

Rational Functions A **rational function** is a quotient or ratio $f(x) = p(x)/q(x)$, where p and q are polynomials. The domain of a rational function is the set of all real x for which $q(x) \neq 0$. The graphs of several rational functions are shown in Figure 1.19.

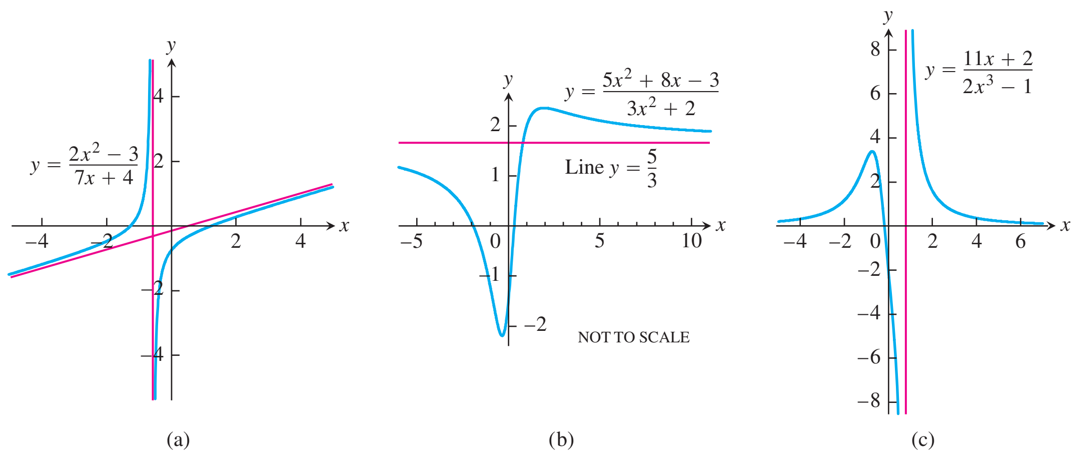


FIGURE 1.19 Graphs of three rational functions. The straight red lines are called *asymptotes* and are not part of the graph.

Algebraic Functions Any function constructed from polynomials using algebraic operations (addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and taking roots) lies within the class of **algebraic functions**. All rational functions are algebraic, but also included are more complicated functions (such as those satisfying an equation like $y^3 - 9xy + x^3 = 0$, studied in Section 3.7). Figure 1.20 displays the graphs of three algebraic functions.

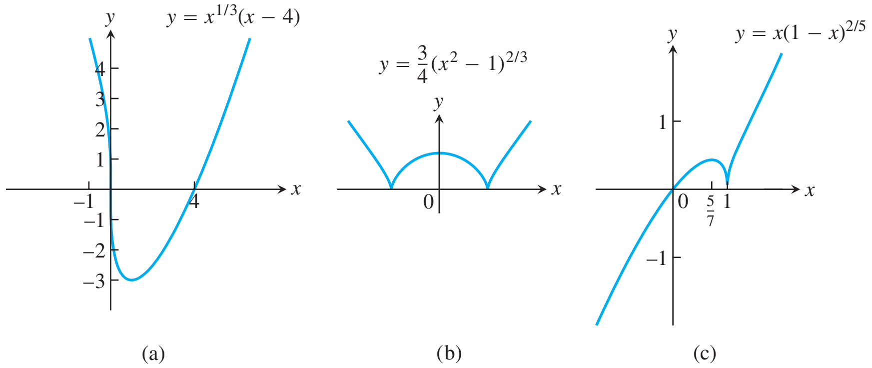
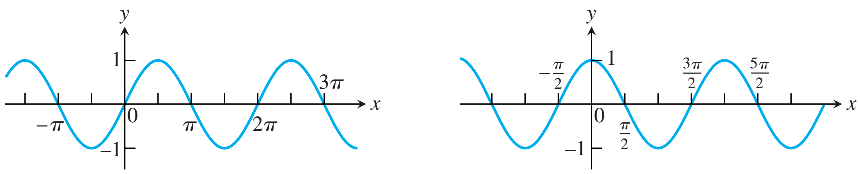


FIGURE 1.20 Graphs of three algebraic functions.

Trigonometric Functions The six basic trigonometric functions are reviewed in Section 1.3. The graphs of the sine and cosine functions are shown in Figure 1.21.



(a) $f(x) = \sin x$ (b) $f(x) = \cos x$

FIGURE 1.21 Graphs of the sine and cosine functions.

Exponential Functions Functions of the form $f(x) = a^x$, where the base $a > 0$ is a positive constant and $a \neq 1$, are called **exponential functions**. All exponential functions have domain $(-\infty, \infty)$ and range $(0, \infty)$, so an exponential function never assumes the value 0. We discuss exponential functions in Section 1.5. The graphs of some exponential functions are shown in Figure 1.22.

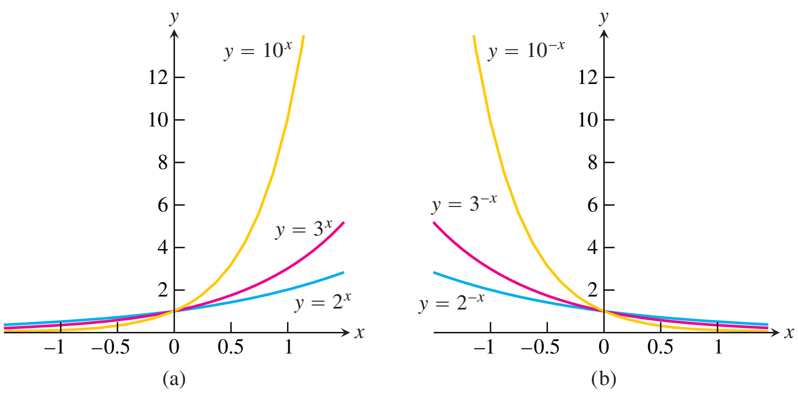


FIGURE 1.22 Graphs of exponential functions.

Logarithmic Functions These are the functions $f(x) = \log_a x$, where the base $a \neq 1$ is a positive constant. They are the *inverse functions* of the exponential functions, and we discuss these functions in Section 1.6. Figure 1.23 shows the graphs of four logarithmic functions with various bases. In each case the domain is $(0, \infty)$ and the range is $(-\infty, \infty)$.

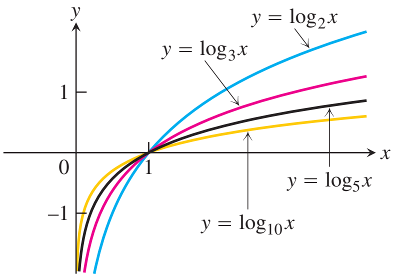


FIGURE 1.23 Graphs of four logarithmic functions.

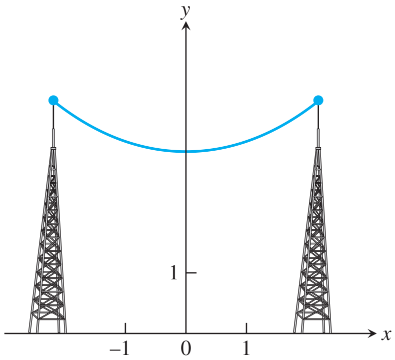


FIGURE 1.24 Graph of a catenary or hanging cable. (The Latin word *catena* means "chain.")

Transcendental Functions These are functions that are not algebraic. They include the trigonometric, inverse trigonometric, exponential, and logarithmic functions, and many other functions as well. A particular example of a transcendental function is a **catenary**. Its graph has the shape of a cable, like a telephone line or electric cable, strung from one support to another and hanging freely under its own weight (Figure 1.24). The function defining the graph is discussed in Section 7.3.

Exercises 1.1

Functions

In Exercises 1–6, find the domain and range of each function.

1. $f(x) = 1 + x^2$

2. $f(x) = 1 - \sqrt{x}$

3. $F(x) = \sqrt{5x + 10}$

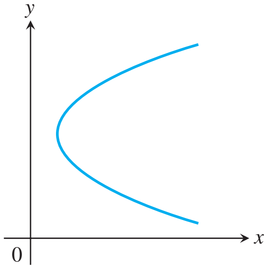
4. $g(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 3x}$

5. $f(t) = \dfrac{4}{3 - t}$

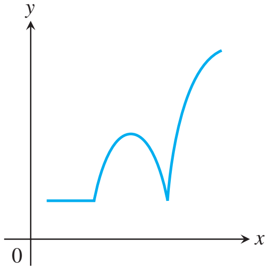
6. $G(t) = \dfrac{2}{t^2 - 16}$

In Exercises 7 and 8, which of the graphs are graphs of functions of x, and which are not? Give reasons for your answers.

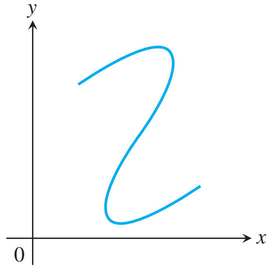
7. a.



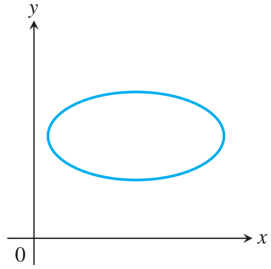
b.



8. a.



b.



Finding Formulas for Functions

9. Express the area and perimeter of an equilateral triangle as a function of the triangle's side length x.

10. Express the side length of a square as a function of the length d of the square's diagonal. Then express the area as a function of the diagonal length.

11. Express the edge length of a cube as a function of the cube's diagonal length d. Then express the surface area and volume of the cube as a function of the diagonal length.

12. A point P in the first quadrant lies on the graph of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$. Express the coordinates of P as functions of the slope of the line joining P to the origin.

13. Consider the point (x, y) lying on the graph of the line $2x + 4y = 5$. Let L be the distance from the point (x, y) to the origin $(0, 0)$. Write L as a function of x.

14. Consider the point (x, y) lying on the graph of $y = \sqrt{x - 3}$. Let L be the distance between the points (x, y) and $(4, 0)$. Write L as a function of y.

Functions and Graphs

Find the domain and graph the functions in Exercises 15–20.

15. $f(x) = 5 - 2x$ **16.** $f(x) = 1 - 2x - x^2$

17. $g(x) = \sqrt{|x|}$ **18.** $g(x) = \sqrt{-x}$

19. $F(t) = t/|t|$ **20.** $G(t) = 1/|t|$

21. Find the domain of $y = \dfrac{x + 3}{4 - \sqrt{x^2 - 9}}$.

22. Find the range of $y = 2 + \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + 4}$.

23. Graph the following equations and explain why they are not graphs of functions of x.

a. $|y| = x$ **b.** $y^2 = x^2$

24. Graph the following equations and explain why they are not graphs of functions of x.

a. $|x| + |y| = 1$ **b.** $|x + y| = 1$

Piecewise-Defined Functions

Graph the functions in Exercises 25–28.

25. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 2 - x, & 1 < x \le 2 \end{cases}$

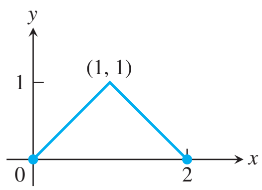
26. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - x, & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 2 - x, & 1 < x \le 2 \end{cases}$

27. $F(x) = \begin{cases} 4 - x^2, & x \le 1 \\ x^2 + 2x, & x > 1 \end{cases}$

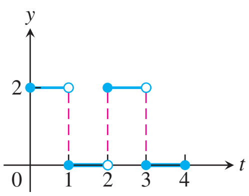
28. $G(x) = \begin{cases} 1/x, & x < 0 \\ x, & 0 \le x \end{cases}$

Find a formula for each function graphed in Exercises 29–32.

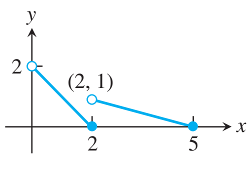
29. a.



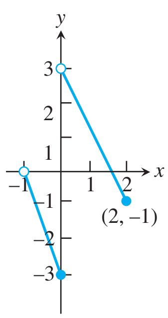
b.



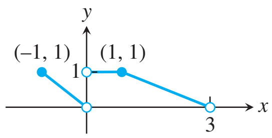
30. a.



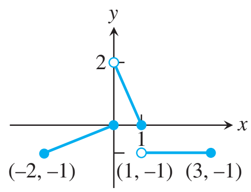
b.



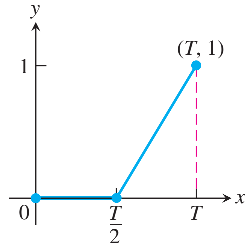
31. a.



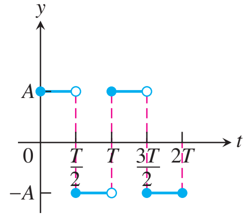
b.



32. a.



b.



The Greatest and Least Integer Functions

33. For what values of x is

a. $\lfloor x \rfloor = 0$? **b.** $\lceil x \rceil = 0$?

34. What real numbers x satisfy the equation $\lfloor x \rfloor = \lceil x \rceil$?

35. Does $\lceil -x \rceil = -\lfloor x \rfloor$ for all real x? Give reasons for your answer.

36. Graph the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \lfloor x \rfloor, & x \ge 0 \\ \lceil x \rceil, & x < 0. \end{cases}$$

Why is $f(x)$ called the *integer part* of x?

Increasing and Decreasing Functions

Graph the functions in Exercises 37–46. What symmetries, if any, do the graphs have? Specify the intervals over which the function is increasing and the intervals where it is decreasing.

37. $y = -x^3$ **38.** $y = -\dfrac{1}{x^2}$

39. $y = -\dfrac{1}{x}$ **40.** $y = \dfrac{1}{|x|}$

41. $y = \sqrt{|x|}$ **42.** $y = \sqrt{-x}$

43. $y = x^3/8$ **44.** $y = -4\sqrt{x}$

45. $y = -x^{3/2}$ **46.** $y = (-x)^{2/3}$

Even and Odd Functions

In Exercises 47–58, say whether the function is even, odd, or neither. Give reasons for your answer.

47. $f(x) = 3$ **48.** $f(x) = x^{-5}$

49. $f(x) = x^2 + 1$ **50.** $f(x) = x^2 + x$

51. $g(x) = x^3 + x$ **52.** $g(x) = x^4 + 3x^2 - 1$

53. $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 1}$ **54.** $g(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 1}$

55. $h(t) = \dfrac{1}{t - 1}$ **56.** $h(t) = |t^3|$

57. $h(t) = 2t + 1$ **58.** $h(t) = 2|t| + 1$

Theory and Examples

59. The variable s is proportional to t, and $s = 25$ when $t = 75$. Determine t when $s = 60$.

Triple integrals التكاملات الثلاثية

Definition: Let D be the region defined by the inequalities $a \le x \le b$ $h_1(x) \le y \le h_2(x)$, $g_1(x,y) \le z \le g_2(x,y)$. If $f(x,y,z)$ is continuous function of three variables, then the triple integral is

$$V = \iiint\limits_D f(x,y,z)dV = \int_a^b \int_{h_1(x)}^{h_2(x)} \int_{g_1(x,y)}^{g_2(x,y)} dz\, dydx$$

Definition: The volume of a closed, bounded region D in space is

$$V = \iiint\limits_D dV$$

Example 1: Find the value of triple integral for the function $f(x,y,z) = 2xyz$ and bounded by surface $z = 2 - \frac{1}{2}x^2$ and the planes $z = 0,\quad y = x,\quad y = 0.$

Solution:

$$V = \iiint\limits_D 2xyz\, dV = \int_0^2 \int_0^x \int_0^{2-\frac{1}{2}x^2} 2xyz\;\; dz\, dydx$$

$$= \int_0^2 \int_0^x xyz^2\Big]_0^{2-\frac{1}{2}x^2} \text{dy dx}$$

$$= \int_0^2 \int_0^x xy(2-\frac{1}{2}x^2)^2 \text{dy dx} = \int_0^2 \int_0^x xy\left[4 - 2x^2 + \frac{1}{4}x^4\right] \text{dydx} =$$

$$\int_0^2 \int_0^x \left[4xy - 2x^3y + \frac{1}{4}x^5y\right] \text{dydx} = \int_0^2 (2xy^2 - x^3y^2 + \frac{1}{8}x^5y^2)\Big]_0^x dx$$

$$= \int_0^2 \left[2x^3 - x^5 + \frac{1}{8}x^7\right] dx = \frac{x^4}{2} - \frac{x^6}{6} + \frac{1}{64}x^8\Big]_0^2 = 8 - \frac{64}{6} + \frac{256}{64} = \frac{4}{3}$$

Example 2: Use **triple integral** to find the volume in the first octant (الثمن) of the region that bounded by two surfaces $x^2 + 4y^2 = 4z$ and $x^2 + 4y^2 = 48 - 8z$.

Solution:

$$V = \iiint_D dV = \int_0^2 \int_0^{2\sqrt{4-y^2}} \int_{\frac{x^2+4y^2}{4}}^{\frac{48-x^2-4y^2}{8}} dz\, dxdy$$

$$= \int_0^2 \int_0^{2\sqrt{4-y^2}} z\Big]_{\frac{x^2+4y^2}{4}}^{\frac{48-x^2+4y^2}{8}} \text{dx dy} = \int_0^2 \int_0^{2\sqrt{4-y^2}} \frac{3}{8}(16 - \text{x}^2 - 4\text{y}^2)\text{dx dy}$$

Example 3 Use **triple integral** to find the volume in the first octant (الثمن) of the region that bounded by the surface $2z = 4 - x^2 - y^2$ and the plane xy.

Solution:

$$V = \iiint_D dV = \int_0^2 \int_0^{\sqrt{4-x^2}} \int_0^{\frac{4-x^2-y^2}{2}} dz\, dydx$$

Example 4: Let D be the solid region that bounded above sphere (الكرة) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ and below $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$, find the value

$V = \iiint_D zdV$.

Solution:

$$V = \iiint_D z\, dV = \int_{-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}}^{\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}} \int_{-\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}-x^2}}^{\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}-x^2}} \int_{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}^{\sqrt{1-x^2-y^2}} z\, dz\, dydx$$

Example 5: Use **triple integral** to find the volume the solid within the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 9$ and between the planes $z = 1$ and $x + z = 5$.

Solution:

$$V = \iint_R \int_1^{5-x} dz\, dA = \int_{-3}^{3} \int_{-\sqrt{9-y^2}}^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} \int_1^{5-x} dz\, dxdy$$

$$= \int_{-3}^{3} \int_{-\sqrt{9-y^2}}^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} z]_1^{5-x} \mathrm{dx\,dy} = \int_{-3}^{3} \int_{-\sqrt{9-y^2}}^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} (4-x)\mathrm{dx\,dy} = 4\int_0^3 \int_0^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} (4-x)\mathrm{dx\,dy} =$$

$$= 4\int_0^3 (4x - \frac{x^2}{2})\Big]_0^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} dy = 4\int_0^3 (4\sqrt{9-y^2} - \frac{9-y^2}{2})dy$$

Example 6: Use **triple integral** to find the volume of the solid enclosed between the xy- plane and $3z = 9 - x^2 - y^2$.

Solution:

$$\iint_R \int_0^{\frac{9-x^2-y^2}{3}} dz\, dA = = \int_{-3}^{3} \int_{-\sqrt{9-y^2}}^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} z]_0^{\frac{9-x^2-y^2}{3}} \mathrm{dx\,dy} =$$

$$\frac{1}{3}\int_{-3}^{3} \int_{-\sqrt{9-y^2}}^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} (9-x^2-y^2)\mathrm{dx\,dy} = \frac{4}{3}\int_0^3 \int_0^{\sqrt{9-y^2}} (9-x^2-y^2)\mathrm{dx\,dy} =$$

We can use polar coordinates

$$= \frac{4}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^3 (9-r^2)\mathrm{rdr\,d\theta} = -\frac{2}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (9-r^2)^2]_0^3 \mathrm{d\theta} = (27)\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \mathrm{d\theta} = (27)\ \theta]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{\mathbf{27}}{\mathbf{2}}\pi$$

Example 7: Use **triple integral** to find the volume bounded above surfaces

$$z = 8 - x^2 - y^2 \text{ and below } z = x^2 + 3y^2 \quad .$$

Solution:

$$8 - x^2 - y^2 = x^2 + 3y^2 \Rightarrow 4y^2 = 8 - 2x^2 \Rightarrow 2y^2 = 4 - x^2 \Rightarrow y = \pm\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}$$

$$\int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}}^{\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}} \int_{x^2+3y^2}^{8-x^2-y^2} dz \text{ dy dx} = \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}}^{\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}} z]_{x^2+3y^2}^{8-x^2-y^2} \text{ dy dx}$$

$$= \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}}^{\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}} 8 - x^2 - y^2 - (x^2 + 3y^2) \text{ dy dx} = \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}}^{\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}} (8 - 2x^2 + 4y^2) \text{dy dx}$$

$$= \int_{-2}^{2} (8y - 2x^2y + \frac{4y^3}{3})\Big]_{-\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}}^{\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}} dx$$

$$= \int_{-2}^{2} \left(8\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} - 2x^2\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} + \frac{4(\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}})^3}{3}\right) - \left(-8\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} + 2x^2\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} - \frac{4(\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}})^3}{3}\right) dx =$$

$$\int_{-2}^{2} \left(16\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} - 4x^2\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} + \frac{8\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}^3}{3}\right) dx =$$

$$\int_{-2}^{2} \left(16\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} - 4x^2\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}} + \frac{8\sqrt{\frac{4-x^2}{2}}^3}{3}\right) dx = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3} \int_{-2}^{2} (4 - x))^{\frac{3}{2}} dx = 8\sqrt{2}\pi$$

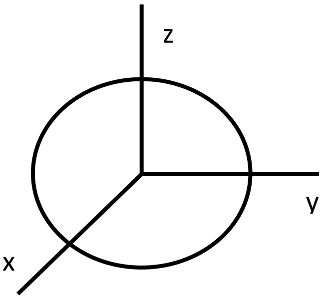
Triple Integrals in Cylindrical Coordinates

التكاملات الثلاثية بالإحداثيات الاسطوانية

Example 2: By using the **cylindrical coordinate,** find the volume of the spherical (الكرة) with radius 2, i.e., $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$.

Solution:

$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4 \Rrightarrow z^2 = 4 - x^2 - y^2 \Rrightarrow z^2 = 4 - r^2 \Rrightarrow z = \pm\sqrt{4 - r^2}$



$$\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_{-\sqrt{4-r^2}}^{\sqrt{4-r^2}} dz \;\text{rdr d}\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} z\Big]_{-\sqrt{4-r^2}}^{\sqrt{4-r^2}} \text{rdr d}\theta =$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} \sqrt{4 - r^2} - \left[-\sqrt{4 - r^2}\right] \text{rdr d}\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} 2\sqrt{4 - r^2}\,\text{rdr d}\theta$$

$$-\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} -2\text{r}\sqrt{4 - r^2}\;\text{dr d}\theta = -\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{[4 - r^2]^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}}\Bigg]_0^2 \text{d}\theta = -\frac{2}{3}\int_0^{2\pi} -[4]^{\frac{3}{2}}\;\text{d}\theta = \frac{16}{3}\int_0^{2\pi} \text{d}\theta$$

$$\frac{16}{3}\theta\Big]_0^{2\pi} = \frac{32\pi}{3}\;\; unit^3$$

Second method

$$8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{\sqrt{4-r^2}} dz\;\text{rdr d}\theta = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2} z\Big]_0^{\sqrt{4-r^2}} \text{rdr d}\theta = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2} \sqrt{4 - r^2}\,\text{rdr d}\theta =$$

$$-4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{(4 - r^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}}\Bigg]_0^2 \text{d}\theta = -\frac{8}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left[(0)^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4^{\frac{3}{2}}\right] \text{d}\theta = -\frac{8}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} -8\;\text{d}\theta = \frac{64}{3}\theta\Big]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = \frac{32}{3}\pi$$

Example 3: By using the **cylindrical coordinate,** find the volume bounded by paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ and the plane $z = 9$.

Solution:

$z = x^2 + y^2 \Rightarrow z = r^2$

$$4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^3\int_{r^2}^9 dz\ \text{rdr d}\theta = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^3 z]_{r^2}^9\ \text{rdr d}\theta = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^3 (9-r^2)\ \text{rdr d}\theta$$

$$-2\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^3 -2\text{r}\ (9-r^2)\ \text{dr d}\theta$$

$$= -2\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{(9-r^2)^2}{2}\Big]_0^3\ \text{d}\theta = -\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} -(9)^{\ 2}\ \ \text{d}\theta = 81\ \theta]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = \frac{81}{2}\pi$$

Second method

$$\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3\int_{r^2}^9 dz\ \text{rdr d}\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3 z]_{r^2}^9\ \text{rdr d}\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3 (9-r^2)\ \text{rdr d}\theta$$

$$-\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3 -2\text{r}\ (9-r^2)\text{dr d}\theta = -\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{(9-r^2)^2}{2}\Big]_0^3\ \text{d}\theta =$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4}\int_0^{2\pi} -(9)^{\ 2}\ \text{d}\theta = \frac{81}{4}\int_0^{2\pi}\text{d}\theta = \frac{81}{4}\ \theta]_0^{2\pi} = \frac{81}{2}\pi$$

Example 4: By using the **cylindrical coordinate,** find the volume of the solid region cut from the spherical (الكرة) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 16$ by cylindrical $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

Solution:

$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 16 \Rightarrow z^2 = 16 - x^2 - y^2 \Rightarrow z = \pm\sqrt{16 - r^2}$

$$8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^2\int_0^{\sqrt{16-r^2}} dz\ \text{rdr d}\theta = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^2 z]_0^{\sqrt{16-r^2}}\ \text{rdr d}\theta = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^2 \sqrt{16-r^2}\ \text{rdr d}\theta =$$

$$= -4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{(16-r^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}}\Bigg]_0^2\ \text{d}\theta = -\frac{8}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}(12)^{\frac{3}{2}} - (16)^{\frac{3}{2}}\ \text{d}\theta =$$

$$= -\frac{8}{3}(12)^{\frac{3}{2}}\theta - (16)^{\frac{3}{2}}\theta]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = -\frac{4}{3}\left[(12)^{\frac{3}{2}} - (16)^{\frac{3}{2}}\right]\pi$$

Example 5: Find the centroid ($\delta = 1$) of the solid enclosed by the cylinder (اسطوانة) $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, bounded above by the paraboloid (الجسم) المكافئ الدوراني $z = x^2 - y^2$, and bounded below by the xy −plane

Solution:

$$\boldsymbol{M} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{r^2} \delta\, dz\, rdr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} Z|_0^{r^2}\ rdr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2 r^3\ dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{r^4}{4}\Big]_0^2\ d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} 4\, d\theta = \ 4\theta|_0^{2\pi} = \ 8\pi \quad \textbf{mass}$$

$$\boldsymbol{M_{yz}} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{r^2} \boldsymbol{x}\, dz\, rdr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} (r\cos\theta)\ \ Z|_0^{r^2}\ rdr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} (r\cos\theta)\, r^3\, dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} \cos\theta\ \ r^4\, dr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \cos\theta\ \frac{r^5}{5}\bigg|_0^2\ d\theta = \frac{32}{5}\int_0^{2\pi} \cos\theta\ d\theta = \frac{32}{5}\ \sin\theta]_0^{2\pi} = 0, \quad \therefore\ \ M_{yz} = 0$$

$$\boldsymbol{M_{xz}} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{r^2} \boldsymbol{y}\, dz\, rdr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} (r\sin\theta)\ \ Z|_0^{r^2}\ rdr\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} (r\sin\theta)\, r^3\, dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} \sin\theta\ \ r^4\, dr\, d\theta$$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \sin\theta\ \frac{r^5}{5}\bigg|_0^2\ d\theta = \frac{32}{5}\int_0^{2\pi} \sin\theta\ d\theta = -\frac{32}{5}\ \cos\theta|_0^{2\pi} = 0, \quad \therefore\ \ M_{xz} = 0$$

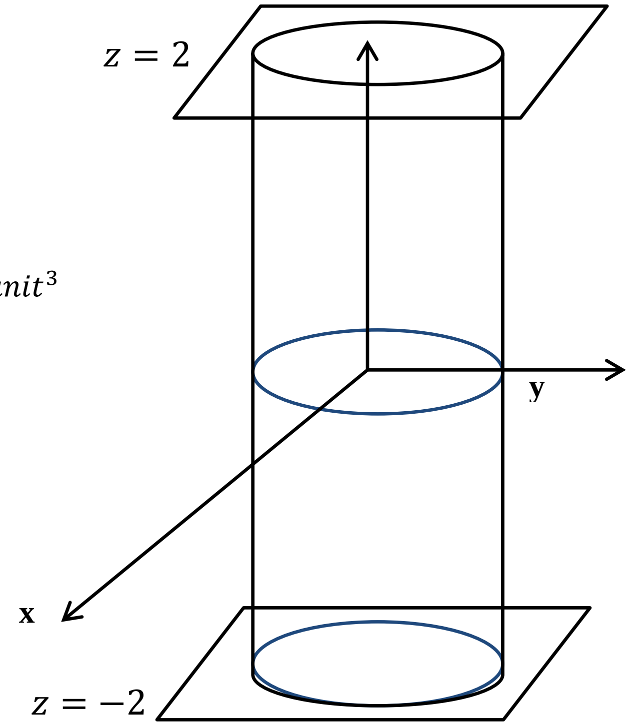
$$\boldsymbol{M_{xy}} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_0^{r^2} \boldsymbol{z}\, dz\, rdr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} \frac{z^2}{2}\bigg|_0^{r^2}\ rdr\, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} r^5\ dr\, d\theta$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{r^6}{6}\bigg|_0^2\ d\theta = \frac{1}{12}\int_0^{2\pi} 64\, d\theta = \frac{64}{12}\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta\ = \frac{32\pi}{3}, \quad \therefore\ \ M_{xy} = \frac{32\pi}{3}$$

Center of mass is

$$\bar{X} = \frac{M_{yz}}{M} = \frac{0}{8\pi} = 0\ , \qquad \bar{y} = \frac{M_{xz}}{M} = \frac{0}{8\pi} = 0\,, \qquad \bar{\boldsymbol{Z}} = \frac{M_{xy}}{M} = \frac{\frac{32\pi}{3}}{8\pi} = \frac{4}{3}$$

Q.2: By using the **cylindrical coordinate,** find the volume of the solid bounded by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and the two planes $z = -2$ $z = 2$.



Solution:

$$V = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_{-2}^{2} dz \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} z]_{-2}^{2} \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta}$$

$$\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} 4 \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta} = = \int_0^{2\pi} 2r^2]_0^2 \ \mathrm{d\theta} = \int_0^{2\pi} 8 \ \mathrm{d\theta} = 16\pi \ \ unit^3$$

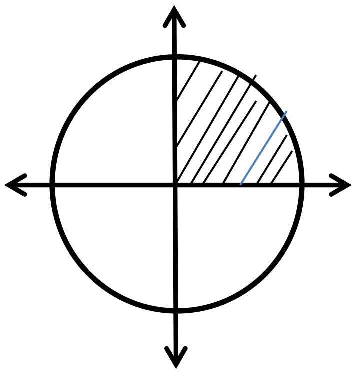
Second method

$$V = \mathbf{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2}\int_{0}^{2} dz \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta} = \mathbf{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} z]_0^2 \ \mathrm{r\ dr\ d\theta} =$$

$$= \mathbf{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{2} \mathrm{2r\ dr\ d\theta} = 2\int_0^{2\pi} r^2]_0^2 \ \mathrm{d\theta} =$$

$$= 2\int_0^{2\pi} 4 \ \mathrm{d\theta} = (2)\ 4\theta]_0^{2\pi} = 16\pi \ \ unit^3$$

Third method



$$V = 2(4)\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2}\int_{0}^{2} dz \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta} = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2} z]_0^2 \ \mathrm{r dr\, d\theta} =$$

$$= 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{2} \mathrm{2r\ dr\ d\theta} = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} r^2]_0^2 \ \mathrm{d\theta} =$$

$$8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 4 \ \mathrm{d\theta} = (8)\ \ 4\theta]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = 16\pi \ \ unit^3$$

Triple Integrals in Spherical Coordinates
التكاملات الثلاثية بالاحداثيات الكروية

Example 1: Convert the point $(8, -\frac{\pi}{3}, -\frac{\pi}{6})$ from spherical to rectangular coordinates.

Solution: $(\rho, \emptyset, \theta) \Longrightarrow (x, y, z)$

$x = \rho\ sin\emptyset\ \ \cos\theta \quad \Rightarrow x = 8 \sin(-\frac{\pi}{3})\ \ \cos(-\frac{\pi}{6})$

$\Rightarrow x = -8 \sin(\frac{\pi}{3})\ \ \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) \quad \Rightarrow x = -8\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\ \ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \Rightarrow \quad x = -6$

$y = \rho\ sin\emptyset\ \ \sin\theta \quad \Rightarrow y = 8 \sin(-\frac{\pi}{3})\ \ \sin(-\frac{\pi}{6})$

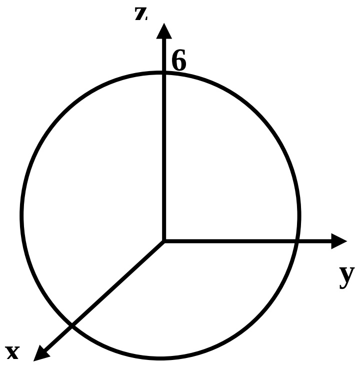
$\Rightarrow y = +8 \sin(\frac{\pi}{3})\ \ \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) \quad \Rightarrow x = 8\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\ \ \frac{1}{2} \Rightarrow \quad y = 2\sqrt{3}$

$z = \rho\ \ cos\emptyset \quad \Rightarrow z = 8\ \ co\,s\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) \Rightarrow z = 8\ (\frac{1}{2}) \ \Rightarrow \quad z = 4$

$$\therefore (8, -\frac{\pi}{3}, -\frac{\pi}{6}) \Longrightarrow (-6,\ \ 2\sqrt{3}\ \ ,4)$$

Example 2: By using the **spherical coordinate,** find the volume of the spherical with center origin point and radius equal to 6

Solution:



$$V = 8 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^6 \rho^2\ \ sin\emptyset\ \ d\rho\ \ d\emptyset\ d\theta =$$

$$8 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left.\frac{\rho^3}{3}\right]_0^6\ sin\emptyset\ d\emptyset\ d\theta =$$

$$8\frac{(6)^3}{3} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left.-\cos\emptyset\right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} d\theta = \ 8\frac{(6)^3}{3} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} d\theta = \ 8\frac{(6)^3}{3}\frac{\pi}{2} = 4\frac{(6)^3\pi}{3}$$

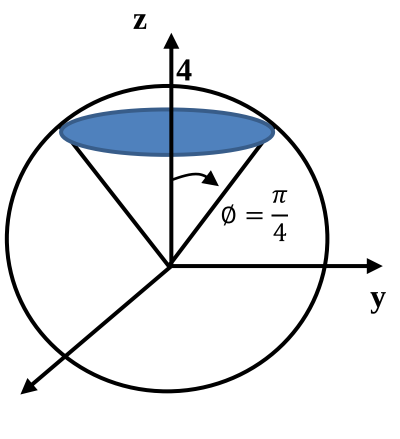
<u>Based on cylindrical coordinates</u>

$$8 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^6 \int_0^{\sqrt{36-r^2}} dz\ \ \text{rdr d}\theta = 8 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^6 \left. z\right]_0^{\sqrt{36-r^2}} \text{rdr d}\theta = 8 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \int_0^6 \sqrt{36 - r^2}\ \text{r dr d}\theta =$$

$$-4 \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left.\frac{(36 - r^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}}\right]_0^6 d\theta = -\frac{8}{3} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \left[(0)^{\frac{3}{2}} - (36)^{\frac{3}{2}}\right] d\theta = \frac{8(6)^3}{3} \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} d\theta = 4\frac{(6)^3\pi}{3}$$

Example 3: By using the **spherical coordinate,** find the solid volume above of the $z = \sqrt{x^2+y^2}$, below the sphere $x^2+y^2+z^2 = 16$

Solution: $z = \sqrt{x^2+y^2}$



$\rho\ cos\emptyset = \sqrt{\rho^2\ sin^2\emptyset\ \ \cos^2\theta + \rho^2\ sin^2\emptyset\ \ \sin^2\theta}$

$\rho\ cos\emptyset = \sqrt{\rho^2\ sin^2\emptyset[\cos^2\theta +\ \sin^2\theta\ ]}$

$\rho\ cos\emptyset = \sqrt{\rho^2\ sin^2\emptyset}$

$\rho\ cos\emptyset = \rho\ \ sin\ \emptyset\ \ \Rightarrow\ \ \frac{sin\ \emptyset}{cos\emptyset} = 1 \Rightarrow tan\emptyset = 1$

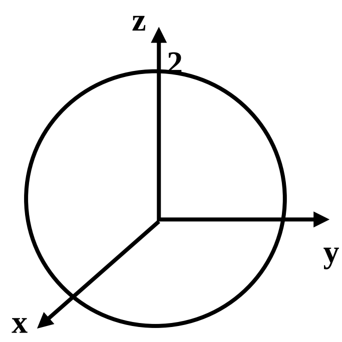
$\therefore \emptyset = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$$V = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}}\int_0^4 \rho^2\ \ sin\emptyset\ \ d\rho\ \ \mathrm{d}\emptyset\ \mathrm{d}\theta = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{\rho^3}{3}\Big]_0^4\ \ sin\emptyset\ \mathrm{d}\emptyset\ \mathrm{d}\theta =$$

$$= 4\,\frac{(4)^3}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} -\cos\emptyset\Big]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}}\ \mathrm{d}\theta =\ -\ 4\,\frac{(4)^3}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - 1)\ \mathrm{d}\theta =$$

Example 4: Find the mas of the sphere with center origin points and radius equal 2, and the density at (x, y) is $\delta(x, y) = 1$.

Solution: $x^2+y^2+z^2 = 4$



1. Based on rectangular coordinates.

$$M = 8\int_0^2\int_0^{\sqrt{4-x^2}}\int_0^{\sqrt{4-x^2-y^2}} \delta\ dz\ dy\ dx =$$

2. Based on cylindrical coordinates.

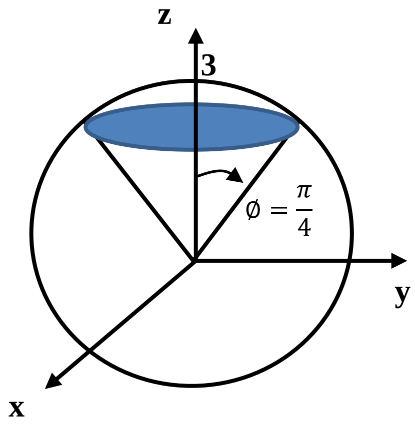
$$M = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^2\int_0^{\sqrt{4-r^2}} \delta dz\ \ \mathrm{rdr\ d\theta} =$$

3. Based on spherical coordinates

$$M = 8\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^2 \delta\ \rho^2\ \ sin\emptyset\ \ d\rho\ \ \mathrm{d}\emptyset\ \mathrm{d}\theta =$$

Example 5: By using the **spherical coordinate,** find the solid volume above of the cone (مخروط) $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$, below the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9$

Solution:



$\rho^2 = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9 \Rightarrow \quad \rho = 3$

The intersection of cone and sphere

$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 9$ ….(1)

$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ …(2)

Substitute Eq.(2) in Eq. (1) we get

$z^2 + z^2 = 9 \Rightarrow 2z^2 = 9 \Rightarrow z = \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}$

Since

$z = \rho \cos\emptyset \quad \Rightarrow \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} = 3\cos\emptyset \Rightarrow \cos\emptyset \Rightarrow \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

$$\therefore \emptyset = \frac{\pi}{4}$$

Or

$$z^2 = x^2 + y^2$$

$\rho^2 \ cos^2\emptyset = \rho^2 \ sin^2\emptyset \ \cos^2\theta + \rho^2 \ sin^2\emptyset \ \sin^2\theta$

$\rho^2 \ cos^2\emptyset = \rho^2 \ sin^2\emptyset[\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta]$

$\rho^2 \ cos^2\emptyset = \rho^2 \ sin^2\emptyset$

$cos\emptyset = sin\emptyset$

$\frac{sin\,\emptyset}{cos\emptyset} = 1 \Rightarrow tan\emptyset = 1$

$\therefore \emptyset = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$$V = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}}\int_0^3 \rho^2 \ sin\emptyset \ d\rho \ d\emptyset \, d\theta = 4\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{\rho^3}{3}\Big]_0^4 \ sin\emptyset \, d\emptyset \, d\theta =$$

$$= 4\frac{(4)^3}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} -\cos\emptyset]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \, d\theta = -4\frac{(4)^3}{3}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} - 1) \, d\theta =$$

Surface Area

المساحة السطحية

Let f and its first derivatives are continuous on the closed region R in the xy −plane, then the area of the surface over R in given by:

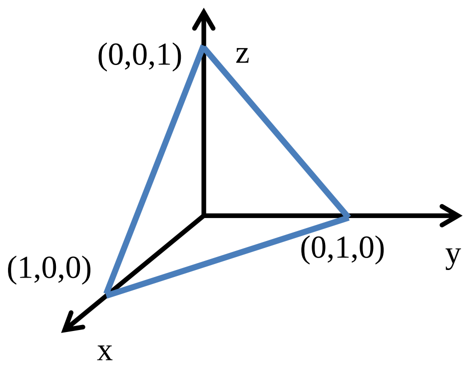
$$S = \iint_R dS = \iint_R \sqrt{[f_x(x,y)]^2 + [f_y(x,y)]^2 + 1} \quad dA$$

Or

$$S = \iint_R \frac{\sqrt{[f_x(x,y)]^2 + [f_y(x,y)]^2 + [f_z(x,y)]^2}}{f_z(x,y)} \quad dA$$

Example 1: Find the surface area $\iint xz\,dz$ for the plane $z = 1 - x - y$.

Solution:



$$dS = \sqrt{{f_x}^2 + {f_y}^2 + 1} \; dA$$

$$dS = \sqrt{(-1)^2 + (-1)^2 + 1} \; dA \Rightarrow dS = \sqrt{3} \; dA$$

$$S = \sqrt{3} \iint_R x(1 - x - y) dA$$

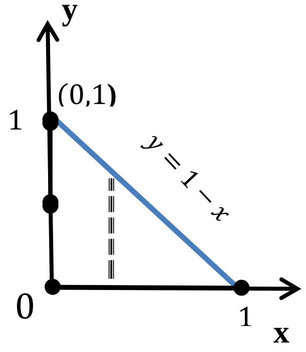
$$S = \sqrt{3} \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} (x - x^2 - xy) \, dy \, dx$$

$$S = \sqrt{3} \int_0^1 xy - x^2 y - \frac{xy^2}{2} \Big]_0^{1-x} \; dx$$

$$S = \sqrt{3} \int_0^1 x(1 - x) - x^2(1 - x) - \frac{x(1-x)^2}{2} \; dx$$

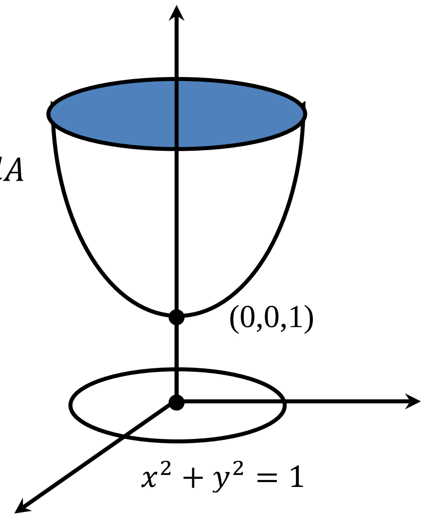
$$S = \sqrt{3} \int_0^1 x - x^2 - x^2 + x^3 - \frac{x(1-x)^2}{2} \; dx$$

$$S = \sqrt{3} \left[\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{2x^3}{3} + \frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x(1-x)^3}{6} \right]_0^1$$



Example 2: Find the surface area of paraboloid $z = 1 + x^2 + y^2$ that lies above the unit circle i.e., $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

Solution:



$$dS = \sqrt{{f_x}^2 + {f_y}^2 + 1}\ dA$$

$$dS = \sqrt{(2x)^2 + (2y)^2 + 1}\ dA \Rightarrow dS = \sqrt{4(x^2 + y^2) + 1}\ dA$$

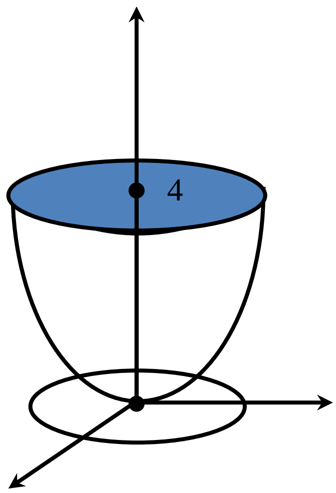
$$S = \iint_R \sqrt{4(x^2 + y^2) + 1}\, dA$$

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^1 \sqrt{4r^2 + 1}\ rdr\ d\theta$$

$$S = \frac{1}{8} \int_0^{2\pi} \left. \frac{(4r^2 + 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}} \right]_0^1 d\theta =$$

Example 3: Find the area of the surface cut from the bottom (الاسفل) of the paraboloid $x^2 + y^2 - z = 0$ by plane $z = 4$.

Solution:



$$dS = \sqrt{{f_x}^2 + {f_y}^2 + 1}\ dA$$

$$dS = \sqrt{(2x)^2 + (2y)^2 + 1}\ dA \Rightarrow$$

$$S = \iint_R \sqrt{4(x^2 + y^2) + 1}\, dA$$

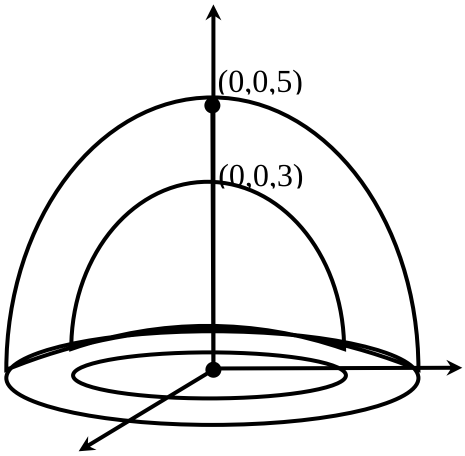
$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^2 \sqrt{4r^2 + 1}\ rdr\ d\theta$$

$$S = \frac{1}{8} \int_0^{2\pi} \left. \frac{(4r^2 + 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}} \right]_0^2 d\theta =$$

Example 4: Find the surface area of the portion (الجزء) of the hemisphere (نصف الكرة) $z = \sqrt{25 - x^2 - y^2}$ that lies above the region R bounded by the circle with radius 3 .

Solution:

$z = \sqrt{25 - x^2 - y^2} \;\; \Rightarrow \;\; x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 25$



$$dS = \frac{\sqrt{(2x)^2 + (2y)^2 + (2z)^2}}{2z} \; dA$$

$$dS = \frac{5}{z} \; dA \Rightarrow \;\; dS = \frac{5}{\sqrt{25 - x^2 - y^2}} \; dA$$

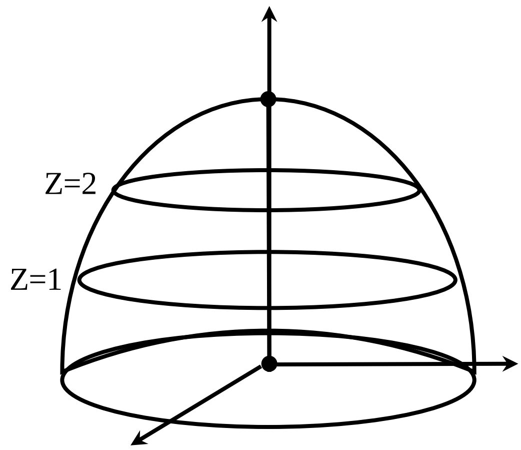
$$S = \iint_R \frac{5}{\sqrt{25 - x^2 - y^2}} \, dA$$

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_3^5 \frac{5}{\sqrt{25-r^2}} \, rdr \, d\theta \Rightarrow \quad S = -\frac{5}{2} \int_0^{2\pi} \left. \frac{(25-r^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\frac{1}{2}} \right]_3^5 \, d\theta =$$

Example 5: Find the surface area of the portion (الجزء) of the sphere with radius 4 which lies above $z = 1$, below $z = 2$

Solution:

$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 16$



$$dS = \frac{\sqrt{(2x)^2 + (2y)^2 + (2z)^2}}{2z} \; dA$$

$$dS = \frac{4}{z} \; dA \Rightarrow \;\; dS = \frac{4}{\sqrt{16-x^2-y^2}} \; dA$$

$$S = \iint_R \frac{4}{\sqrt{16 - x^2 - y^2}} \, dA$$

$$S = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_{\sqrt{12}}^{\sqrt{15}} \frac{4}{\sqrt{16-r^2}} \, rdr \, d\theta \Rightarrow$$

a **partition** of R. A small rectangular piece of width Δx and height Δy has area $\Delta A = \Delta x \Delta y$. If we number the small pieces partitioning R in some order, then their areas are given by numbers $\Delta A_1, \Delta A_2, \ldots, \Delta A_n$, where ΔA_k is the area of the kth small rectangle.

To form a Riemann sum over R, we choose a point (x_k, y_k) in the kth small rectangle, multiply the value of f at that point by the area ΔA_k, and add together the products:

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k.$$

Depending on how we pick (x_k, y_k) in the kth small rectangle, we may get different values for S_n.

We are interested in what happens to these Riemann sums as the widths and heights of all the small rectangles in the partition of R approach zero. The **norm** of a partition P, written $\|P\|$, is the largest width or height of any rectangle in the partition. If $\|P\| = 0.1$ then all the rectangles in the partition of R have width at most 0.1 and height at most 0.1. Sometimes the Riemann sums converge as the norm of P goes to zero, written $\|P\| \to 0$. The resulting limit is then written as

$$\lim_{\|P\| \to 0} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k.$$

As $\|P\| \to 0$ and the rectangles get narrow and short, their number n increases, so we can also write this limit as

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k,$$

with the understanding that $\|P\| \to 0$, and hence $\Delta A_k \to 0$, as $n \to \infty$.

Many choices are involved in a limit of this kind. The collection of small rectangles is determined by the grid of vertical and horizontal lines that determine a rectangular partition of R. In each of the resulting small rectangles there is a choice of an arbitrary point (x_k, y_k) at which f is evaluated. These choices together determine a single Riemann sum. To form a limit, we repeat the whole process again and again, choosing partitions whose rectangle widths and heights both go to zero and whose number goes to infinity.

When a limit of the sums S_n exists, giving the same limiting value no matter what choices are made, then the function f is said to be **integrable** and the limit is called the **double integral** of f over R, written as

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\,dA \qquad \text{or} \qquad \iint_R f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

It can be shown that if $f(x, y)$ is a continuous function throughout R, then f is integrable, as in the single-variable case discussed in Chapter 5. Many discontinuous functions are also integrable, including functions that are discontinuous only on a finite number of points or smooth curves. We leave the proof of these facts to a more advanced text.

Double Integrals as Volumes

When $f(x, y)$ is a positive function over a rectangular region R in the xy-plane, we may interpret the double integral of f over R as the volume of the 3-dimensional solid region over the xy-plane bounded below by R and above by the surface $z = f(x, y)$ (Figure 15.2). Each term $f(x_k, y_k)\Delta A_k$ in the sum $S_n = \sum f(x_k, y_k)\Delta A_k$ is the volume of a vertical rectangular box that approximates the volume of the portion of the solid that stands directly above the base ΔA_k. The sum S_n thus approximates what we want to call the total volume of the solid. We *define* this volume to be

$$\text{Volume} = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_n = \iint_R f(x, y)\,dA,$$

where $\Delta A_k \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$.

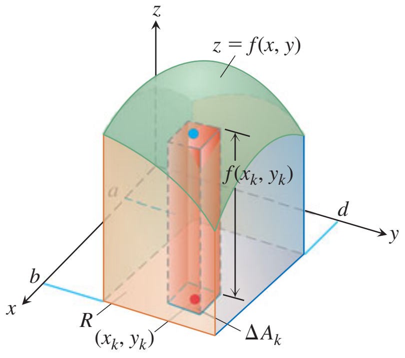


FIGURE 15.2 Approximating solids with rectangular boxes leads us to define the volumes of more general solids as double integrals. The volume of the solid shown here is the double integral of $f(x, y)$ over the base region R.

As you might expect, this more general method of calculating volume agrees with the methods in Chapter 6, but we do not prove this here. Figure 15.3 shows Riemann sum approximations to the volume becoming more accurate as the number n of boxes increases.

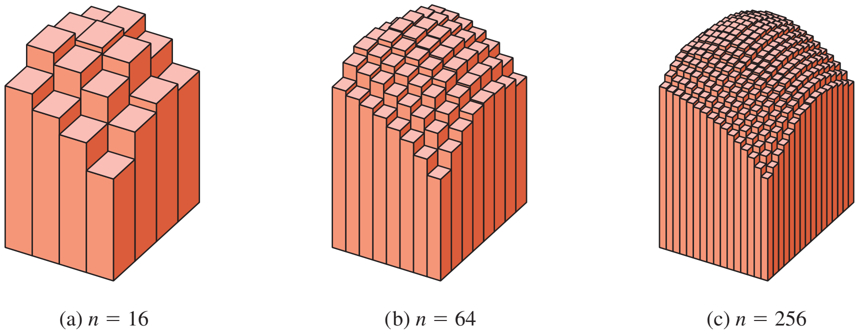


FIGURE 15.3 As n increases, the Riemann sum approximations approach the total volume of the solid shown in Figure 15.2.

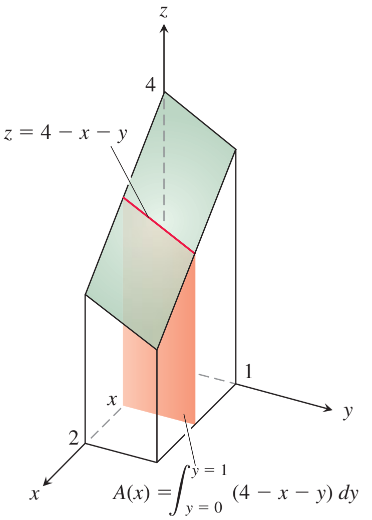


FIGURE 15.4 To obtain the cross-sectional area $A(x)$, we hold x fixed and integrate with respect to y.

Fubini's Theorem for Calculating Double Integrals

Suppose that we wish to calculate the volume under the plane $z = 4 - x - y$ over the rectangular region R: $0 \le x \le 2, 0 \le y \le 1$ in the xy-plane. If we apply the method of slicing from Section 6.1, with slices perpendicular to the x-axis (Figure 15.4), then the volume is

$$\int_{x=0}^{x=2} A(x)\, dx, \tag{1}$$

where $A(x)$ is the cross-sectional area at x. For each value of x, we may calculate $A(x)$ as the integral

$$A(x) = \int_{y=0}^{y=1} (4 - x - y)\, dy, \tag{2}$$

which is the area under the curve $z = 4 - x - y$ in the plane of the cross-section at x. In calculating $A(x)$, x is held fixed and the integration takes place with respect to y. Combining Equations (1) and (2), we see that the volume of the entire solid is

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Volume} &= \int_{x=0}^{x=2} A(x)\, dx = \int_{x=0}^{x=2} \left(\int_{y=0}^{y=1} (4 - x - y)\, dy \right) dx \\
&= \int_{x=0}^{x=2} \left[4y - xy - \frac{y^2}{2} \right]_{y=0}^{y=1} dx = \int_{x=0}^{x=2} \left(\frac{7}{2} - x \right) dx \\
&= \left[\frac{7}{2}x - \frac{x^2}{2} \right]_0^2 = 5.
\end{aligned}$$

If we just wanted to write a formula for the volume, without carrying out any of the integrations, we could write

$$\text{Volume} = \int_0^2 \int_0^1 (4 - x - y)\, dy\, dx. \tag{3}$$

The expression on the right, called an **iterated** or **repeated integral**, says that the volume is obtained by integrating $4 - x - y$ with respect to y from $y = 0$ to $y = 1$, holding x fixed, and then integrating the resulting expression in x with respect to x from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$. The limits of integration 0 and 1 are associated with y, so they are placed on the integral closest to dy. The other limits of integration, 0 and 2, are associated with the variable x, so they are placed on the outside integral symbol that is paired with dx.

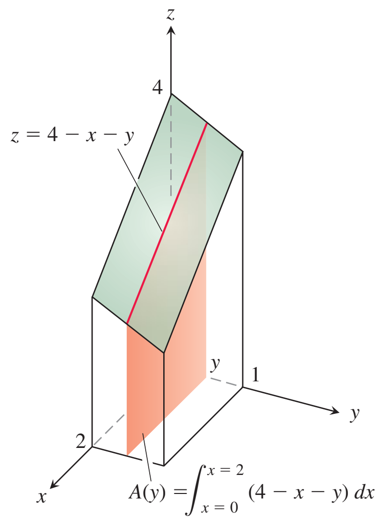


FIGURE 15.5 To obtain the cross-sectional area $A(y)$, we hold y fixed and integrate with respect to x.

What would have happened if we had calculated the volume by slicing with planes perpendicular to the y-axis (Figure 15.5)? As a function of y, the typical cross-sectional area is

$$A(y) = \int_{x=0}^{x=2} (4 - x - y)\, dx = \left[4x - \frac{x^2}{2} - xy\right]_{x=0}^{x=2} = 6 - 2y. \qquad (4)$$

The volume of the entire solid is therefore

$$\text{Volume} = \int_{y=0}^{y=1} A(y)\, dy = \int_{y=0}^{y=1} (6 - 2y)\, dy = \left[6y - y^2\right]_0^1 = 5,$$

in agreement with our earlier calculation.

Again, we may give a formula for the volume as an iterated integral by writing

$$\text{Volume} = \int_0^1 \int_0^2 (4 - x - y)\, dx\, dy.$$

The expression on the right says we can find the volume by integrating $4 - x - y$ with respect to x from $x = 0$ to $x = 2$ as in Equation (4) and integrating the result with respect to y from $y = 0$ to $y = 1$. In this iterated integral, the order of integration is first x and then y, the reverse of the order in Equation (3).

What do these two volume calculations with iterated integrals have to do with the double integral

$$\iint_R (4 - x - y)\, dA$$

over the rectangle R: $0 \le x \le 2$, $0 \le y \le 1$? The answer is that both iterated integrals give the value of the double integral. This is what we would reasonably expect, since the double integral measures the volume of the same region as the two iterated integrals. A theorem published in 1907 by Guido Fubini says that the double integral of any continuous function over a rectangle can be calculated as an iterated integral in either order of integration. (Fubini proved his theorem in greater generality, but this is what it says in our setting.)

HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHY
Guido Fubini
(1879–1943)

THEOREM 1—Fubini's Theorem (First Form) If $f(x, y)$ is continuous throughout the rectangular region R: $a \le x \le b$, $c \le y \le d$, then

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA = \int_c^d \int_a^b f(x, y)\, dx\, dy = \int_a^b \int_c^d f(x, y)\, dy\, dx.$$

Fubini's Theorem says that double integrals over rectangles can be calculated as iterated integrals. Thus, we can evaluate a double integral by integrating with respect to one variable at a time using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus.

Fubini's Theorem also says that we may calculate the double integral by integrating in *either* order, a genuine convenience. When we calculate a volume by slicing, we may use either planes perpendicular to the x-axis or planes perpendicular to the y-axis.

EXAMPLE 1 Calculate $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$ for

$$f(x, y) = 100 - 6x^2y \quad \text{and} \quad R:\ 0 \le x \le 2,\ -1 \le y \le 1.$$

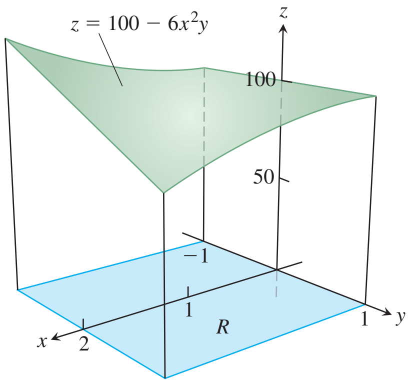


FIGURE 15.6 The double integral $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$ gives the volume under this surface over the rectangular region R (Example 1).

Solution Figure 15.6 displays the volume beneath the surface. By Fubini's Theorem,

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA = \int_{-1}^{1}\int_{0}^{2}(100 - 6x^2y)\, dx\, dy = \int_{-1}^{1}\Big[100x - 2x^3y\Big]_{x=0}^{x=2} dy$$

$$= \int_{-1}^{1}(200 - 16y)\, dy = \Big[200y - 8y^2\Big]_{-1}^{1} = 400.$$

Reversing the order of integration gives the same answer:

$$\int_{0}^{2}\int_{-1}^{1}(100 - 6x^2y)\, dy\, dx = \int_{0}^{2}\Big[100y - 3x^2y^2\Big]_{y=-1}^{y=1} dx$$

$$= \int_{0}^{2}\big[(100 - 3x^2) - (-100 - 3x^2)\big]\, dx$$

$$= \int_{0}^{2} 200\, dx = 400.$$

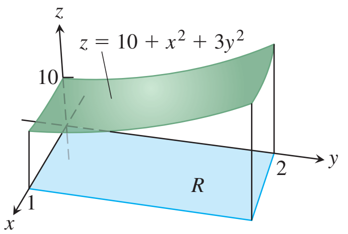


FIGURE 15.7 The double integral $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$ gives the volume under this surface over the rectangular region R (Example 2).

EXAMPLE 2 Find the volume of the region bounded above by the elliptical paraboloid $z = 10 + x^2 + 3y^2$ and below by the rectangle R: $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 2$.

Solution The surface and volume are shown in Figure 15.7. The volume is given by the double integral

$$V = \iint_R (10 + x^2 + 3y^2)\, dA = \int_{0}^{1}\int_{0}^{2}(10 + x^2 + 3y^2)\, dy\, dx$$

$$= \int_{0}^{1}\Big[10y + x^2y + y^3\Big]_{y=0}^{y=2} dx$$

$$= \int_{0}^{1}(20 + 2x^2 + 8)\, dx = \Big[20x + \frac{2}{3}x^3 + 8x\Big]_{0}^{1} = \frac{86}{3}.$$

Exercises 15.1

Evaluating Iterated Integrals

In Exercises 1–14, evaluate the iterated integral.

1. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{2}\int_{0}^{4} 2xy\, dy\, dx$

2. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2}\int_{-1}^{1} (x - y)\, dy\, dx$

3. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{0}\int_{-1}^{1} (x + y + 1)\, dx\, dy$

4. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1}\int_{0}^{1} \left(1 - \frac{x^2 + y^2}{2}\right) dx\, dy$

5. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{3}\int_{0}^{2} (4 - y^2)\, dy\, dx$

6. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{3}\int_{-2}^{0} (x^2y - 2xy)\, dy\, dx$

7. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1}\int_{0}^{1} \frac{y}{1 + xy}\, dx\, dy$

8. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{4}\int_{0}^{4} \left(\frac{x}{2} + \sqrt{y}\right) dx\, dy$

9. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\ln 2}\int_{1}^{\ln 5} e^{2x+y}\, dy\, dx$

10. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1}\int_{1}^{2} xye^{x}\, dy\, dx$

11. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{2}\int_{0}^{\pi/2} y \sin x\, dx\, dy$

12. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi}^{2\pi}\int_{0}^{\pi} (\sin x + \cos y)\, dx\, dy$

13. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{4}\int_{1}^{e} \frac{\ln x}{xy}\, dx\, dy$

14. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{2}\int_{1}^{2} x \ln y\, dy\, dx$

Evaluating Double Integrals over Rectangles

In Exercises 15–22, evaluate the double integral over the given region R.

15. $\displaystyle\iint_R (6y^2 - 2x)\, dA, \quad R:\ 0 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le 2$

16. $\displaystyle\iint_R \left(\frac{\sqrt{x}}{y^2}\right) dA, \quad R:\ 0 \le x \le 4,\ 1 \le y \le 2$

17. $\displaystyle\iint_R xy \cos y\, dA, \quad R:\ -1 \le x \le 1,\ 0 \le y \le \pi$

18. $\displaystyle\iint_R y \sin(x + y)\, dA, \quad R:\ -\pi \le x \le 0,\ 0 \le y \le \pi$

19. $\iint_R e^{x-y}\, dA, \quad R: \quad 0 \le x \le \ln 2, \quad 0 \le y \le \ln 2$

20. $\iint_R xye^{xy^2}\, dA, \quad R: \quad 0 \le x \le 2, \quad 0 \le y \le 1$

21. $\iint_R \frac{xy^3}{x^2+1}\, dA, \quad R: \quad 0 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le 2$

22. $\iint_R \frac{y}{x^2y^2+1}\, dA, \quad R: \quad 0 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le 1$

In Exercises 23 and 24, integrate f over the given region.

23. **Square** $f(x, y) = 1/(xy)$ over the square $1 \le x \le 2$, $1 \le y \le 2$

24. **Rectangle** $f(x, y) = y \cos xy$ over the rectangle $0 \le x \le \pi$, $0 \le y \le 1$

25. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ and below by the square $R: -1 \le x \le 1$, $-1 \le y \le 1$.

26. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the elliptical paraboloid $z = 16 - x^2 - y^2$ and below by the square $R: 0 \le x \le 2, 0 \le y \le 2$.

27. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the plane $z = 2 - x - y$ and below by the square $R: 0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1$.

28. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the plane $z = y/2$ and below by the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le 4, 0 \le y \le 2$.

29. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the surface $z = 2 \sin x \cos y$ and below by the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le \pi/2$, $0 \le y \le \pi/4$.

30. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the surface $z = 4 - y^2$ and below by the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 2$.

31. Find a value of the constant k so that $\int_1^2 \int_0^3 kx^2 y\, dx\, dy = 1$.

32. Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{1} \int_0^{\pi/2} x \sin \sqrt{y}\, dy\, dx$.

33. Use Fubini's Theorem to evaluate

$$\int_0^2 \int_0^1 \frac{x}{1 + xy}\, dx\, dy.$$

34. Use Fubini's Theorem to evaluate

$$\int_0^1 \int_0^3 xe^{xy}\, dx\, dy.$$

T 35. Use a software application to compute the integrals

a. $\int_0^1 \int_0^2 \frac{y - x}{(x + y)^3}\, dx\, dy$

b. $\int_0^2 \int_0^1 \frac{y - x}{(x + y)^3}\, dy\, dx$

Explain why your results do not contradict Fubini's Theorem.

36. If $f(x, y)$ is continuous over $R: a \le x \le b, c \le y \le d$ and

$$F(x, y) = \int_a^x \int_c^y f(u, v)\, dv\, du$$

on the interior of R, find the second partial derivatives F_{xy} and F_{yx}.

15.2 Double Integrals over General Regions

In this section we define and evaluate double integrals over bounded regions in the plane which are more general than rectangles. These double integrals are also evaluated as iterated integrals, with the main practical problem being that of determining the limits of integration. Since the region of integration may have boundaries other than line segments parallel to the coordinate axes, the limits of integration often involve variables, not just constants.

Double Integrals over Bounded, Nonrectangular Regions

To define the double integral of a function $f(x, y)$ over a bounded, nonrectangular region R, such as the one in Figure 15.8, we again begin by covering R with a grid of small rectangular cells whose union contains all points of R. This time, however, we cannot exactly fill R with a finite number of rectangles lying inside R, since its boundary is curved, and some of the small rectangles in the grid lie partly outside R. A partition of R is formed by taking the rectangles that lie completely inside it, not using any that are either partly or completely outside. For commonly arising regions, more and more of R is included as the norm of a partition (the largest width or height of any rectangle used) approaches zero.

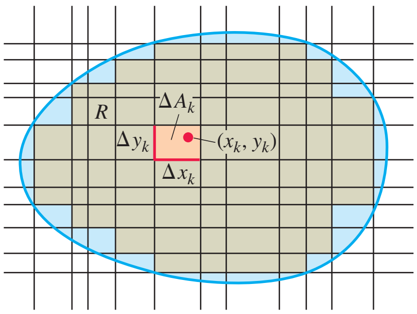


FIGURE 15.8 A rectangular grid partitioning a bounded, nonrectangular region into rectangular cells.

Once we have a partition of R, we number the rectangles in some order from 1 to n and let ΔA_k be the area of the kth rectangle. We then choose a point (x_k, y_k) in the kth rectangle and form the Riemann sum

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\, \Delta A_k.$$

As the norm of the partition forming S_n goes to zero, $\|P\| \to 0$, the width and height of each enclosed rectangle goes to zero and their number goes to infinity. If $f(x, y)$ is a continuous function, then these Riemann sums converge to a limiting value, not dependent on any of the choices we made. This limit is called the **double integral** of $f(x, y)$ over R:

$$\lim_{||P|| \to 0} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k = \iint_R f(x, y)\,dA.$$

The nature of the boundary of R introduces issues not found in integrals over an interval. When R has a curved boundary, the n rectangles of a partition lie inside R but do not cover all of R. In order for a partition to approximate R well, the parts of R covered by small rectangles lying partly outside R must become negligible as the norm of the partition approaches zero. This property of being nearly filled in by a partition of small norm is satisfied by all the regions that we will encounter. There is no problem with boundaries made from polygons, circles, ellipses, and from continuous graphs over an interval, joined end to end. A curve with a "fractal" type of shape would be problematic, but such curves arise rarely in most applications. A careful discussion of which type of regions R can be used for computing double integrals is left to a more advanced text.

Volumes

If $f(x, y)$ is positive and continuous over R, we define the volume of the solid region between R and the surface $z = f(x, y)$ to be $\iint_R f(x, y)\,dA$, as before (Figure 15.9).

If R is a region like the one shown in the xy-plane in Figure 15.10, bounded "above" and "below" by the curves $y = g_2(x)$ and $y = g_1(x)$ and on the sides by the lines $x = a$, $x = b$, we may again calculate the volume by the method of slicing. We first calculate the cross-sectional area

$$A(x) = \int_{y=g_1(x)}^{y=g_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy$$

and then integrate $A(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$ to get the volume as an iterated integral:

$$V = \int_a^b A(x)\,dx = \int_a^b \int_{g_1(x)}^{g_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx. \tag{1}$$

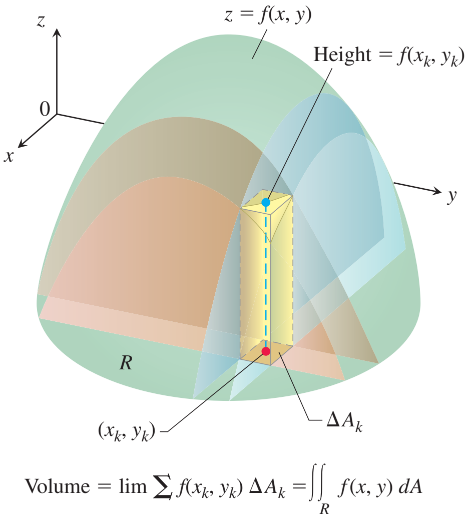


FIGURE 15.9 We define the volumes of solids with curved bases as a limit of approximating rectangular boxes.

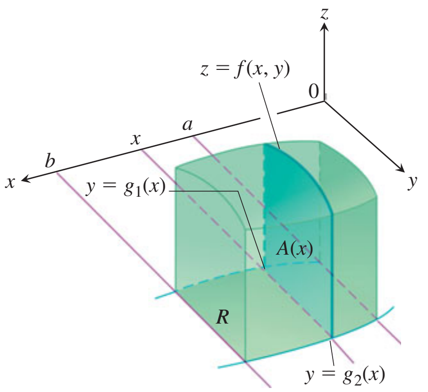


FIGURE 15.10 The area of the vertical slice shown here is $A(x)$. To calculate the volume of the solid, we integrate this area from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$\int_a^b A(x)\,dx = \int_a^b \int_{g_1(x)}^{g_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx.$$

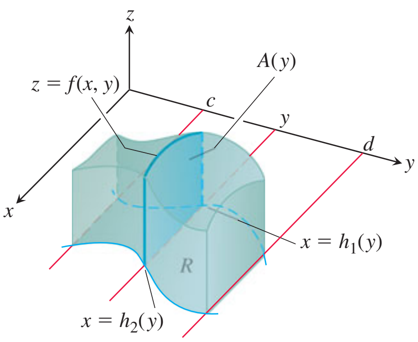


FIGURE 15.11 The volume of the solid shown here is

$$\int_c^d A(y)\,dy = \int_c^d \int_{h_1(y)}^{h_2(y)} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

For a given solid, Theorem 2 says we can calculate the volume as in Figure 15.10, or in the way shown here. Both calculations have the same result.

Similarly, if R is a region like the one shown in Figure 15.11, bounded by the curves $x = h_2(y)$ and $x = h_1(y)$ and the lines $y = c$ and $y = d$, then the volume calculated by slicing is given by the iterated integral

$$\text{Volume} = \int_c^d \int_{h_1(y)}^{h_2(y)} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy. \tag{2}$$

That the iterated integrals in Equations (1) and (2) both give the volume that we defined to be the double integral of f over R is a consequence of the following stronger form of Fubini's Theorem.

THEOREM 2—Fubini's Theorem (Stronger Form) Let $f(x, y)$ be continuous on a region R.

1. If R is defined by $a \le x \le b$, $g_1(x) \le y \le g_2(x)$, with g_1 and g_2 continuous on $[a, b]$, then

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\,dA = \int_a^b \int_{g_1(x)}^{g_2(x)} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx.$$

2. If R is defined by $c \le y \le d$, $h_1(y) \le x \le h_2(y)$, with h_1 and h_2 continuous on $[c, d]$, then

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\,dA = \int_c^d \int_{h_1(y)}^{h_2(y)} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

EXAMPLE 1 Find the volume of the prism whose base is the triangle in the xy-plane bounded by the x-axis and the lines $y = x$ and $x = 1$ and whose top lies in the plane

$$z = f(x, y) = 3 - x - y.$$

Solution See Figure 15.12. For any x between 0 and 1, y may vary from $y = 0$ to $y = x$ (Figure 15.12b). Hence,

$$V = \int_0^1 \int_0^x (3 - x - y)\,dy\,dx = \int_0^1 \left[3y - xy - \frac{y^2}{2}\right]_{y=0}^{y=x} dx$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(3x - \frac{3x^2}{2}\right) dx = \left[\frac{3x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{2}\right]_{x=0}^{x=1} = 1.$$

When the order of integration is reversed (Figure 15.12c), the integral for the volume is

$$V = \int_0^1 \int_y^1 (3 - x - y)\,dx\,dy = \int_0^1 \left[3x - \frac{x^2}{2} - xy\right]_{x=y}^{x=1} dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(3 - \frac{1}{2} - y - 3y + \frac{y^2}{2} + y^2\right) dy$$

$$= \int_0^1 \left(\frac{5}{2} - 4y + \frac{3}{2}y^2\right) dy = \left[\frac{5}{2}y - 2y^2 + \frac{y^3}{2}\right]_{y=0}^{y=1} = 1.$$

The two integrals are equal, as they should be. ■

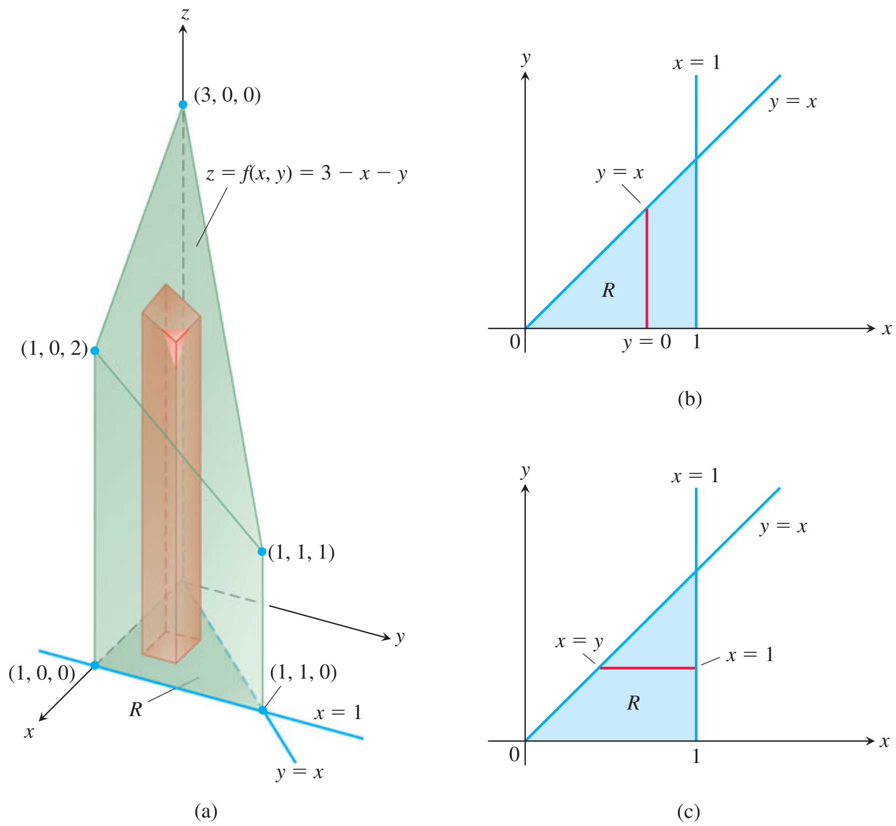


FIGURE 15.12 (a) Prism with a triangular base in the *xy*-plane. The volume of this prism is defined as a double integral over *R*. To evaluate it as an iterated integral, we may integrate first with respect to *y* and then with respect to *x*, or the other way around (Example 1). (b) Integration limits of

$$\int_{x=0}^{x=1}\int_{y=0}^{y=x} f(x, y)\,dy\,dx.$$

If we integrate first with respect to *y*, we integrate along a vertical line through *R* and then integrate from left to right to include all the vertical lines in *R*. (c) Integration limits of

$$\int_{y=0}^{y=1}\int_{x=y}^{x=1} f(x, y)\,dx\,dy.$$

If we integrate first with respect to *x*, we integrate along a horizontal line through *R* and then integrate from bottom to top to include all the horizontal lines in *R*.

Although Fubini's Theorem assures us that a double integral may be calculated as an iterated integral in either order of integration, the value of one integral may be easier to find than the value of the other. The next example shows how this can happen.

EXAMPLE 2 Calculate

$$\iint_R \frac{\sin x}{x}\,dA,$$

where R is the triangle in the *xy*-plane bounded by the *x*-axis, the line $y = x$, and the line $x = 1$.

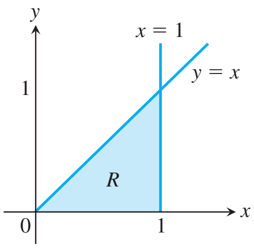


FIGURE 15.13 The region of integration in Example 2.

Solution The region of integration is shown in Figure 15.13. If we integrate first with respect to y and then with respect to x, we find

$$\int_0^1 \left(\int_0^x \frac{\sin x}{x}\, dy \right) dx = \int_0^1 \left(y \frac{\sin x}{x} \bigg]_{y=0}^{y=x} \right) dx = \int_0^1 \sin x \, dx$$

$$= -\cos(1) + 1 \approx 0.46.$$

If we reverse the order of integration and attempt to calculate

$$\int_0^1 \int_y^1 \frac{\sin x}{x}\, dx\, dy,$$

we run into a problem because $\int ((\sin x)/x)\, dx$ cannot be expressed in terms of elementary functions (there is no simple antiderivative).

There is no general rule for predicting which order of integration will be the good one in circumstances like these. If the order you first choose doesn't work, try the other. Sometimes neither order will work, and then we need to use numerical approximations. ■

Finding Limits of Integration

We now give a procedure for finding limits of integration that applies for many regions in the plane. Regions that are more complicated, and for which this procedure fails, can often be split up into pieces on which the procedure works.

Using Vertical Cross-Sections When faced with evaluating $\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$, integrating first with respect to y and then with respect to x, do the following three steps:

1. *Sketch.* Sketch the region of integration and label the bounding curves (Figure 15.14a).
2. *Find the y-limits of integration.* Imagine a vertical line L cutting through R in the direction of increasing y. Mark the y-values where L enters and leaves. These are the y-limits of integration and are usually functions of x (instead of constants) (Figure 15.14b).
3. *Find the x-limits of integration.* Choose x-limits that include all the vertical lines through R. The integral shown here (see Figure 15.14c) is

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA = \int_{x=0}^{x=1} \int_{y=1-x}^{y=\sqrt{1-x^2}} f(x, y)\, dy\, dx.$$

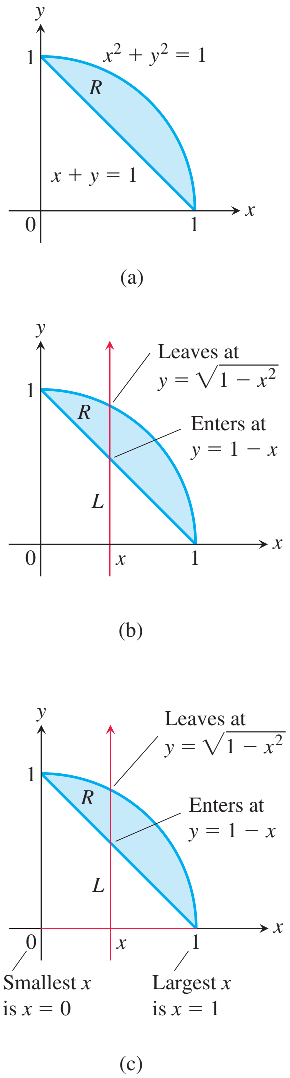


FIGURE 15.14 Finding the limits of integration when integrating first with respect to y and then with respect to x.

Using Horizontal Cross-Sections To evaluate the same double integral as an iterated integral with the order of integration reversed, use horizontal lines instead of vertical lines in Steps 2 and 3 (see Figure 15.15). The integral is

$$\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA = \int_0^1 \int_{1-y}^{\sqrt{1-y^2}} f(x, y)\, dx\, dy.$$

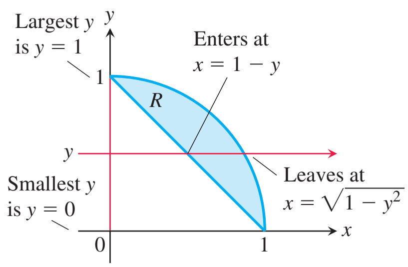


FIGURE 15.15 Finding the limits of integration when integrating first with respect to x and then with respect to y.

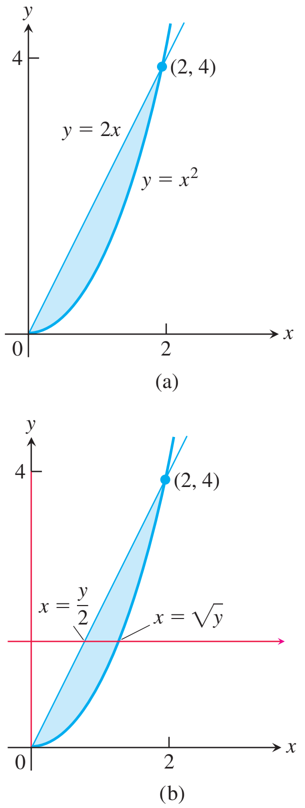


FIGURE 15.16 Region of integration for Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3 Sketch the region of integration for the integral

$$\int_0^2 \int_{x^2}^{2x} (4x + 2)\, dy\, dx$$

and write an equivalent integral with the order of integration reversed.

Solution The region of integration is given by the inequalities $x^2 \le y \le 2x$ and $0 \le x \le 2$. It is therefore the region bounded by the curves $y = x^2$ and $y = 2x$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 2$ (Figure 15.16a).

To find limits for integrating in the reverse order, we imagine a horizontal line passing from left to right through the region. It enters at $x = y/2$ and leaves at $x = \sqrt{y}$. To include all such lines, we let y run from $y = 0$ to $y = 4$ (Figure 15.16b). The integral is

$$\int_0^4 \int_{y/2}^{\sqrt{y}} (4x + 2)\, dx\, dy.$$

The common value of these integrals is 8. ■

Properties of Double Integrals

Like single integrals, double integrals of continuous functions have algebraic properties that are useful in computations and applications.

If $f(x, y)$ and $g(x, y)$ are continuous on the bounded region R, then the following properties hold.

1. *Constant Multiple:* $\displaystyle\iint_R cf(x, y)\, dA = c\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA$ (any number c)

2. *Sum and Difference:*

$$\iint_R (f(x, y) \pm g(x, y))\, dA = \iint_R f(x, y)\, dA \pm \iint_R g(x, y)\, dA$$

3. *Domination:*

(a) $\displaystyle\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA \ge 0$ if $f(x, y) \ge 0$ on R

(b) $\displaystyle\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA \ge \iint_R g(x, y)\, dA$ if $f(x, y) \ge g(x, y)$ on R

4. *Additivity:* $\displaystyle\iint_R f(x, y)\, dA = \iint_{R_1} f(x, y)\, dA + \iint_{R_2} f(x, y)\, dA$

if R is the union of two nonoverlapping regions R_1 and R_2

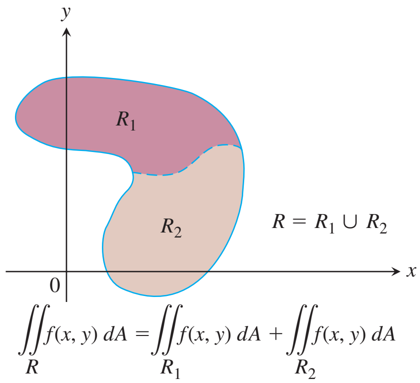


FIGURE 15.17 The Additivity Property for rectangular regions holds for regions bounded by smooth curves.

Property 4 assumes that the region of integration R is decomposed into nonoverlapping regions R_1 and R_2 with boundaries consisting of a finite number of line segments or smooth curves. Figure 15.17 illustrates an example of this property.

The idea behind these properties is that integrals behave like sums. If the function $f(x, y)$ is replaced by its constant multiple $cf(x, y)$, then a Riemann sum for f

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k$$

is replaced by a Riemann sum for cf

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} cf(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k = c\sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k = cS_n.$$

Taking limits as $n \to \infty$ shows that $c \lim_{n\to\infty} S_n = c \iint_R f\,dA$ and $\lim_{n\to\infty} cS_n = \iint_R cf\,dA$ are equal. It follows that the Constant Multiple Property carries over from sums to double integrals.

The other properties are also easy to verify for Riemann sums, and carry over to double integrals for the same reason. While this discussion gives the idea, an actual proof that these properties hold requires a more careful analysis of how Riemann sums converge.

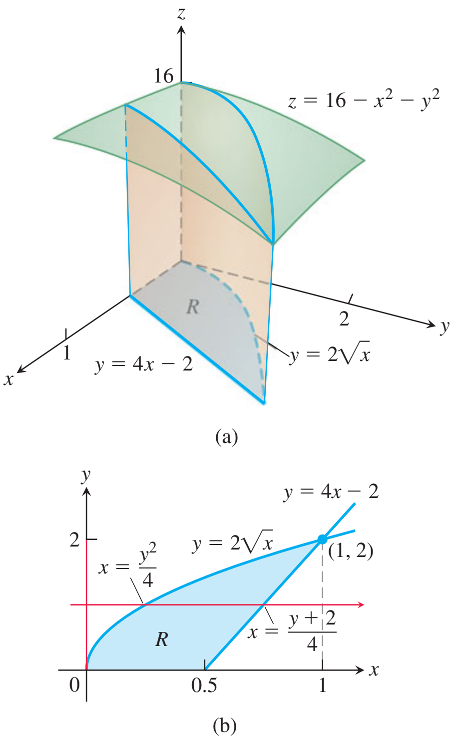


FIGURE 15.18 (a) The solid "wedgelike" region whose volume is found in Example 4. (b) The region of integration R showing the order $dx\,dy$.

EXAMPLE 4 Find the volume of the wedgelike solid that lies beneath the surface $z = 16 - x^2 - y^2$ and above the region R bounded by the curve $y = 2\sqrt{x}$, the line $y = 4x - 2$, and the x-axis.

Solution Figure 15.18a shows the surface and the "wedgelike" solid whose volume we want to calculate. Figure 15.18b shows the region of integration in the xy-plane. If we integrate in the order $dy\,dx$ (first with respect to y and then with respect to x), two integrations will be required because y varies from $y = 0$ to $y = 2\sqrt{x}$ for $0 \le x \le 0.5$, and then varies from $y = 4x - 2$ to $y = 2\sqrt{x}$ for $0.5 \le x \le 1$. So we choose to integrate in the order $dx\,dy$, which requires only one double integral whose limits of integration are indicated in Figure 15.18b. The volume is then calculated as the iterated integral:

$$\iint_R (16 - x^2 - y^2)\,dA$$

$$= \int_0^2 \int_{y^2/4}^{(y+2)/4} (16 - x^2 - y^2)\,dx\,dy$$

$$= \int_0^2 \left[16x - \frac{x^3}{3} - xy^2\right]_{x=y^2/4}^{x=(y+2)/4} dx$$

$$= \int_0^2 \left[4(y+2) - \frac{(y+2)^3}{3\cdot 64} - \frac{(y+2)y^2}{4} - 4y^2 + \frac{y^6}{3\cdot 64} + \frac{y^4}{4}\right] dy$$

$$= \left[\frac{191y}{24} + \frac{63y^2}{32} - \frac{145y^3}{96} - \frac{49y^4}{768} + \frac{y^5}{20} + \frac{y^7}{1344}\right]_0^2 = \frac{20803}{1680} \approx 12.4.$$ ■

Our development of the double integral has focused on its representation of the volume of the solid region between R and the surface $z = f(x, y)$ of a positive continuous function. Just as we saw with signed area in the case of single integrals, when $f(x_k, y_k)$ is negative, then the product $f(x_k, y_k)\Delta A_k$ is the negative of the volume of the rectangular box shown in Figure 15.9 that was used to form the approximating Riemann sum. So for an arbitrary continuous function f defined over R, the limit of any Riemann sum represents the *signed* volume (not the total volume) of the solid region between R and the surface. The double integral has other interpretations as well, and in the next section we will see how it is used to calculate the area of a general region in the plane.

Exercises 15.2

Sketching Regions of Integration

In Exercises 1–8, sketch the described regions of integration.

1. $0 \le x \le 3, \quad 0 \le y \le 2x$

2. $-1 \le x \le 2, \quad x - 1 \le y \le x^2$

3. $-2 \le y \le 2, \quad y^2 \le x \le 4$

4. $0 \le y \le 1, \quad y \le x \le 2y$

5. $0 \le x \le 1, \quad e^x \le y \le e$

6. $1 \le x \le e^2, \quad 0 \le y \le \ln x$

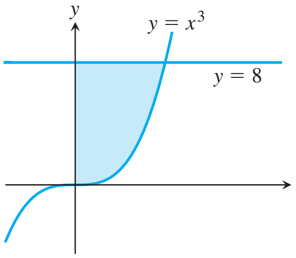
7. $0 \le y \le 1, \quad 0 \le x \le \sin^{-1} y$

8. $0 \le y \le 8, \quad \frac{1}{4}y \le x \le y^{1/3}$

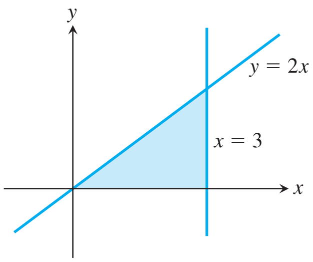
Finding Limits of Integration

In Exercises 9–18, write an iterated integral for $\iint_R dA$ over the described region R using (a) vertical cross-sections, (b) horizontal cross-sections.

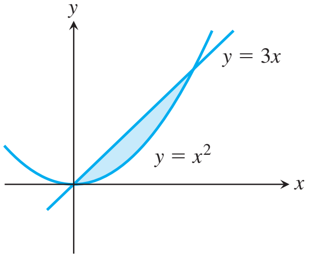
9.



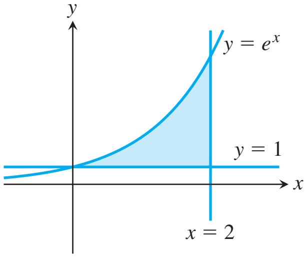
10.



11.



12.



13. Bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$, $y = 0$, and $x = 9$

14. Bounded by $y = \tan x$, $x = 0$, and $y = 1$

15. Bounded by $y = e^{-x}$, $y = 1$, and $x = \ln 3$

16. Bounded by $y = 0$, $x = 0$, $y = 1$, and $y = \ln x$

17. Bounded by $y = 3 - 2x$, $y = x$, and $x = 0$

18. Bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = x + 2$

Finding Regions of Integration and Double Integrals

In Exercises 19–24, sketch the region of integration and evaluate the integral.

19. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{x} x \sin y \, dy\, dx$

20. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\sin x} y \, dy\, dx$

21. $\displaystyle\int_1^{\ln 8}\int_0^{\ln y} e^{x+y} \, dx\, dy$

22. $\displaystyle\int_1^{2}\int_y^{y^2} dx\, dy$

23. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_0^{y^2} 3y^3 e^{xy} \, dx\, dy$

24. $\displaystyle\int_1^{4}\int_0^{\sqrt{x}} \frac{3}{2} e^{y/\sqrt{x}} \, dy\, dx$

In Exercises 25–28, integrate f over the given region.

25. Quadrilateral $f(x, y) = x/y$ over the region in the first quadrant bounded by the lines $y = x$, $y = 2x$, $x = 1$, and $x = 2$

26. Triangle $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ over the triangular region with vertices $(0, 0)$, $(1, 0)$, and $(0, 1)$

27. Triangle $f(u, v) = v - \sqrt{u}$ over the triangular region cut from the first quadrant of the uv-plane by the line $u + v = 1$

28. Curved region $f(s, t) = e^s \ln t$ over the region in the first quadrant of the st-plane that lies above the curve $s = \ln t$ from $t = 1$ to $t = 2$

Each of Exercises 29–32 gives an integral over a region in a Cartesian coordinate plane. Sketch the region and evaluate the integral.

29. $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{0}\int_v^{-v} 2 \, dp\, dv$ (the pv-plane)

30. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_0^{\sqrt{1-s^2}} 8t \, dt\, ds$ (the st-plane)

31. $\displaystyle\int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3}\int_0^{\sec t} 3\cos t \, du\, dt$ (the tu-plane)

32. $\displaystyle\int_0^{3/2}\int_1^{4-2u} \frac{4 - 2u}{v^2} \, dv\, du$ (the uv-plane)

Reversing the Order of Integration

In Exercises 33–46, sketch the region of integration and write an equivalent double integral with the order of integration reversed.

33. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_2^{4-2x} dy\, dx$

34. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2}\int_{y-2}^{0} dx\, dy$

35. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_y^{\sqrt{y}} dx\, dy$

36. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_{1-x}^{1-x^2} dy\, dx$

37. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_1^{e^x} dy\, dx$

38. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\ln 2}\int_{e^y}^{2} dx\, dy$

39. $\displaystyle\int_0^{3/2}\int_0^{9-4x^2} 16x \, dy\, dx$

40. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2}\int_0^{4-y^2} y \, dx\, dy$

41. $\displaystyle\int_0^{1}\int_{-\sqrt{1-y^2}}^{\sqrt{1-y^2}} 3y \, dx\, dy$

42. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2}\int_{-\sqrt{4-x^2}}^{\sqrt{4-x^2}} 6x \, dy\, dx$

43. $\displaystyle\int_1^{e}\int_0^{\ln x} xy \, dy\, dx$

44. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/6}\int_{\sin x}^{1/2} xy^2 \, dy\, dx$

45. $\displaystyle\int_0^{3}\int_1^{e^y} (x + y) \, dx\, dy$

46. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\sqrt{3}}\int_0^{\tan^{-1} y} \sqrt{xy} \, dx\, dy$

In Exercises 47–56, sketch the region of integration, reverse the order of integration, and evaluate the integral.

47. $\int_0^{\pi}\int_x^{\pi}\frac{\sin y}{y}\,dy\,dx$

48. $\int_0^{2}\int_x^{2}2y^2\sin xy\,dy\,dx$

49. $\int_0^{1}\int_y^{1}x^2e^{xy}\,dx\,dy$

50. $\int_0^{2}\int_0^{4-x^2}\frac{xe^{2y}}{4-y}\,dy\,dx$

51. $\int_0^{2\sqrt{\ln 3}}\int_{y/2}^{\sqrt{\ln 3}}e^{x^2}\,dx\,dy$

52. $\int_0^{3}\int_{\sqrt{x/3}}^{1}e^{y^3}\,dy\,dx$

53. $\int_0^{1/16}\int_{y^{1/4}}^{1/2}\cos\left(16\pi x^5\right)dx\,dy$

54. $\int_0^{8}\int_{\sqrt[3]{x}}^{2}\frac{dy\,dx}{y^4+1}$

55. Square region $\iint_R (y-2x^2)\,dA$ where R is the region bounded by the square $|x|+|y|=1$

56. Triangular region $\iint_R xy\,dA$ where R is the region bounded by the lines $y=x$, $y=2x$, and $x+y=2$

Volume Beneath a Surface $z = f(x, y)$

57. Find the volume of the region bounded above by the paraboloid $z=x^2+y^2$ and below by the triangle enclosed by the lines $y=x$, $x=0$, and $x+y=2$ in the xy-plane.

58. Find the volume of the solid that is bounded above by the cylinder $z=x^2$ and below by the region enclosed by the parabola $y=2-x^2$ and the line $y=x$ in the xy-plane.

59. Find the volume of the solid whose base is the region in the xy-plane that is bounded by the parabola $y=4-x^2$ and the line $y=3x$, while the top of the solid is bounded by the plane $z=x+4$.

60. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes, the cylinder $x^2+y^2=4$, and the plane $z+y=3$.

61. Find the volume of the solid in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes, the plane $x=3$, and the parabolic cylinder $z=4-y^2$.

62. Find the volume of the solid cut from the first octant by the surface $z=4-x^2-y$.

63. Find the volume of the wedge cut from the first octant by the cylinder $z=12-3y^2$ and the plane $x+y=2$.

64. Find the volume of the solid cut from the square column $|x|+|y|\le 1$ by the planes $z=0$ and $3x+z=3$.

65. Find the volume of the solid that is bounded on the front and back by the planes $x=2$ and $x=1$, on the sides by the cylinders $y=\pm 1/x$, and above and below by the planes $z=x+1$ and $z=0$.

66. Find the volume of the solid bounded on the front and back by the planes $x=\pm\pi/3$, on the sides by the cylinders $y=\pm\sec x$, above by the cylinder $z=1+y^2$, and below by the xy-plane.

In Exercises 67 and 68, sketch the region of integration and the solid whose volume is given by the double integral.

67. $\int_0^{3}\int_0^{2-2x/3}\left(1-\frac{1}{3}x-\frac{1}{2}y\right)dy\,dx$

68. $\int_0^{4}\int_{-\sqrt{16-y^2}}^{\sqrt{16-y^2}}\sqrt{25-x^2-y^2}\,dx\,dy$

Integrals over Unbounded Regions

Improper double integrals can often be computed similarly to improper integrals of one variable. The first iteration of the following improper integrals is conducted just as if they were proper integrals. One then evaluates an improper integral of a single variable by taking appropriate limits, as in Section 8.8. Evaluate the improper integrals in Exercises 69–72 as iterated integrals.

69. $\int_1^{\infty}\int_{e^{-x}}^{1}\frac{1}{x^3y}\,dy\,dx$

70. $\int_{-1}^{1}\int_{-1/\sqrt{1-x^2}}^{1/\sqrt{1-x^2}}(2y+1)\,dy\,dx$

71. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{1}{(x^2+1)(y^2+1)}\,dx\,dy$

72. $\int_0^{\infty}\int_0^{\infty}xe^{-(x+2y)}\,dx\,dy$

Approximating Integrals with Finite Sums

In Exercises 73 and 74, approximate the double integral of $f(x, y)$ over the region R partitioned by the given vertical lines $x=a$ and horizontal lines $y=c$. In each subrectangle, use (x_k, y_k) as indicated for your approximation.

$$\iint_R f(x,y)\,dA \approx \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k,y_k)\,\Delta A_k$$

73. $f(x,y)=x+y$ over the region R bounded above by the semicircle $y=\sqrt{1-x^2}$ and below by the x-axis, using the partition $x=-1,-1/2,0,1/4,1/2,1$ and $y=0,1/2,1$ with (x_k, y_k) the lower left corner in the kth subrectangle (provided the subrectangle lies within R)

74. $f(x,y)=x+2y$ over the region R inside the circle $(x-2)^2+(y-3)^2=1$ using the partition $x=1,3/2,2,5/2,3$ and $y=2,5/2,3,7/2,4$ with (x_k, y_k) the center (centroid) in the kth subrectangle (provided the subrectangle lies within R)

Theory and Examples

75. Circular sector Integrate $f(x,y)=\sqrt{4-x^2}$ over the smaller sector cut from the disk $x^2+y^2\le 4$ by the rays $\theta=\pi/6$ and $\theta=\pi/2$.

76. Unbounded region Integrate $f(x,y)=1/[(x^2-x)(y-1)^{2/3}]$ over the infinite rectangle $2\le x<\infty$, $0\le y\le 2$.

77. Noncircular cylinder A solid right (noncircular) cylinder has its base R in the xy-plane and is bounded above by the paraboloid $z=x^2+y^2$. The cylinder's volume is

$$V=\int_0^1\int_0^y (x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy+\int_1^2\int_0^{2-y}(x^2+y^2)\,dx\,dy.$$

Sketch the base region R and express the cylinder's volume as a single iterated integral with the order of integration reversed. Then evaluate the integral to find the volume.

78. Converting to a double integral Evaluate the integral

$$\int_0^2 (\tan^{-1} \pi x - \tan^{-1} x)\, dx.$$

(*Hint:* Write the integrand as an integral.)

79. Maximizing a double integral What region R in the xy-plane maximizes the value of

$$\iint_R (4 - x^2 - 2y^2)\, dA?$$

Give reasons for your answer.

80. Minimizing a double integral What region R in the xy-plane minimizes the value of

$$\iint_R (x^2 + y^2 - 9)\, dA?$$

Give reasons for your answer.

81. Is it possible to evaluate the integral of a continuous function $f(x, y)$ over a rectangular region in the xy-plane and get different answers depending on the order of integration? Give reasons for your answer.

82. How would you evaluate the double integral of a continuous function $f(x, y)$ over the region R in the xy-plane enclosed by the triangle with vertices (0, 1), (2, 0), and (1, 2)? Give reasons for your answer.

83. Unbounded region Prove that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2-y^2}\, dx\, dy = \lim_{b\to\infty}\int_{-b}^{b}\int_{-b}^{b} e^{-x^2-y^2}\, dx\, dy = 4\left(\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x^2}\, dx\right)^2.$$

84. Improper double integral Evaluate the improper integral

$$\int_0^1\int_0^3 \frac{x^2}{(y-1)^{2/3}}\, dy\, dx.$$

COMPUTER EXPLORATIONS

Use a CAS double-integral evaluator to estimate the values of the integrals in Exercises 85–88.

85. $\displaystyle\int_1^3\int_1^x \frac{1}{xy}\, dy\, dx$

86. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^1 e^{-(x^2+y^2)}\, dy\, dx$

87. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^1 \tan^{-1} xy\, dy\, dx$

88. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1\int_0^{\sqrt{1-x^2}} 3\sqrt{1 - x^2 - y^2}\, dy\, dx$

Use a CAS double-integral evaluator to find the integrals in Exercises 89–94. Then reverse the order of integration and evaluate, again with a CAS.

89. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_{2y}^4 e^{x^2}\, dx\, dy$

90. $\displaystyle\int_0^3\int_{x^2}^9 x\cos(y^2)\, dy\, dx$

91. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{y^3}^{4\sqrt{2y}} (x^2y - xy^2)\, dx\, dy$

92. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_0^{4-y^2} e^{xy}\, dx\, dy$

93. $\displaystyle\int_1^2\int_0^{x^2} \frac{1}{x+y}\, dy\, dx$

94. $\displaystyle\int_1^2\int_{y^3}^8 \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+y^2}}\, dx\, dy$

15.3 Area by Double Integration

In this section we show how to use double integrals to calculate the areas of bounded regions in the plane, and to find the average value of a function of two variables.

Areas of Bounded Regions in the Plane

If we take $f(x, y) = 1$ in the definition of the double integral over a region R in the preceding section, the Riemann sums reduce to

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(x_k, y_k)\,\Delta A_k = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta A_k. \tag{1}$$

This is simply the sum of the areas of the small rectangles in the partition of R, and approximates what we would like to call the area of R. As the norm of a partition of R approaches zero, the height and width of all rectangles in the partition approach zero, and the coverage of R becomes increasingly complete (Figure 15.8). We define the area of R to be the limit

$$\lim_{\|P\|\to 0}\sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta A_k = \iint_R dA. \tag{2}$$

DEFINITION The **area** of a closed, bounded plane region R is

$$A = \iint_R dA.$$

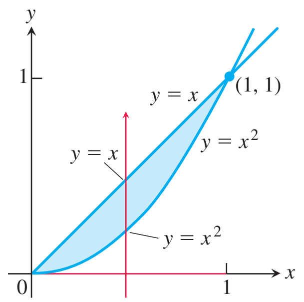


FIGURE 15.19 The region in Example 1.

As with the other definitions in this chapter, the definition here applies to a greater variety of regions than does the earlier single-variable definition of area, but it agrees with the earlier definition on regions to which they both apply. To evaluate the integral in the definition of area, we integrate the constant function $f(x, y) = 1$ over R.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the area of the region R bounded by $y = x$ and $y = x^2$ in the first quadrant.

Solution We sketch the region (Figure 15.19), noting where the two curves intersect at the origin and (1, 1), and calculate the area as

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \int_0^1 \int_{x^2}^{x} dy\, dx = \int_0^1 \Big[y \Big]_{x^2}^{x} dx \\ &= \int_0^1 (x - x^2)\, dx = \left[\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^1 = \frac{1}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the single-variable integral $\int_0^1 (x - x^2)\, dx$, obtained from evaluating the inside iterated integral, is the integral for the area between these two curves using the method of Section 5.6. ■

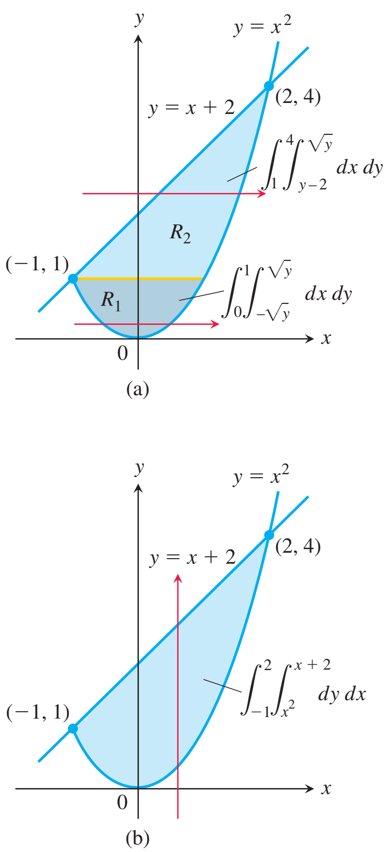


FIGURE 15.20 Calculating this area takes (a) two double integrals if the first integration is with respect to x, but (b) only one if the first integration is with respect to y (Example 2).

EXAMPLE 2 Find the area of the region R enclosed by the parabola $y = x^2$ and the line $y = x + 2$.

Solution If we divide R into the regions R_1 and R_2 shown in Figure 15.20a, we may calculate the area as

$$A = \iint_{R_1} dA + \iint_{R_2} dA = \int_0^1 \int_{-\sqrt{y}}^{\sqrt{y}} dx\, dy + \int_1^4 \int_{y-2}^{\sqrt{y}} dx\, dy.$$

On the other hand, reversing the order of integration (Figure 15.20b) gives

$$A = \int_{-1}^{2} \int_{x^2}^{x+2} dy\, dx.$$

This second result, which requires only one integral, is simpler and is the only one we would bother to write down in practice. The area is

$$A = \int_{-1}^{2} \Big[y \Big]_{x^2}^{x+2} dx = \int_{-1}^{2} (x + 2 - x^2)\, dx = \left[\frac{x^2}{2} + 2x - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_{-1}^{2} = \frac{9}{2}.$$ ■

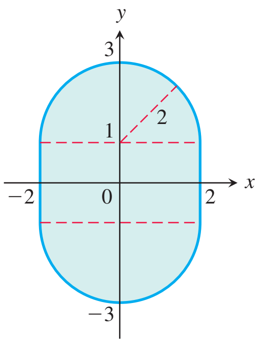


FIGURE 15.21 The playing field described by the region R in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3 Find the area of the playing field described by $R: -2 \le x \le 2,\ -1 - \sqrt{4 - x^2} \le y \le 1 + \sqrt{4 - x^2}$, using

(a) Fubini's Theorem **(b)** Simple geometry.

Solution The region R is shown in Figure 15.21.

(a) From the symmetries observed in the figure, we see that the area of R is 4 times its area in the first quadrant. Using Fubini's Theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \iint_R dA = 4\int_0^2 \int_0^{1+\sqrt{4-x^2}} dy\, dx \\ &= 4\int_0^2 \left(1 + \sqrt{4 - x^2}\right) dx \\ &= 4\left[x + \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{4 - x^2} + \frac{4}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{2}\right]_0^2 \\ &= 4\left(2 + 0 + 2\cdot\frac{\pi}{2} - 0\right) = 8 + 4\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Integral Table Formula 45

(b) The region R consists of a rectangle mounted on two sides by half disks of radius 2. The area can be computed by summing the area of the 4×2 rectangle and the area of a circle of radius 2, so

$$A = 8 + \pi 2^2 = 8 + 4\pi.$$

Average Value

The average value of an integrable function of one variable on a closed interval is the integral of the function over the interval divided by the length of the interval. For an integrable function of two variables defined on a bounded region in the plane, the average value is the integral over the region divided by the area of the region. This can be visualized by thinking of the function as giving the height at one instant of some water sloshing around in a tank whose vertical walls lie over the boundary of the region. The average height of the water in the tank can be found by letting the water settle down to a constant height. The height is then equal to the volume of water in the tank divided by the area of R. We are led to define the average value of an integrable function f over a region R as follows:

$$\textbf{Average value } \text{of } f \text{ over } R = \frac{1}{\text{area of } R}\iint_R f\, dA. \qquad (3)$$

If f is the temperature of a thin plate covering R, then the double integral of f over R divided by the area of R is the plate's average temperature. If $f(x, y)$ is the distance from the point (x, y) to a fixed point P, then the average value of f over R is the average distance of points in R from P.

EXAMPLE 4 Find the average value of $f(x, y) = x \cos xy$ over the rectangle $R: 0 \le x \le \pi,\ 0 \le y \le 1$.

Solution The value of the integral of f over R is

$$\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^1 x\cos xy\,dy\,dx = \int_0^{\pi}\Big[\sin xy\Big]_{y=0}^{y=1}dx \qquad \int x\cos xy\,dy = \sin xy + C$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi}(\sin x - 0)\,dx = -\cos x\Big]_0^{\pi} = 1 + 1 = 2.$$

The area of R is π. The average value of f over R is $2/\pi$.

Exercises 15.3

Area by Double Integrals

In Exercises 1–12, sketch the region bounded by the given lines and curves. Then express the region's area as an iterated double integral and evaluate the integral.

1. The coordinate axes and the line $x + y = 2$
2. The lines $x = 0$, $y = 2x$, and $y = 4$
3. The parabola $x = -y^2$ and the line $y = x + 2$
4. The parabola $x = y - y^2$ and the line $y = -x$
5. The curve $y = e^x$ and the lines $y = 0$, $x = 0$, and $x = \ln 2$
6. The curves $y = \ln x$ and $y = 2\ln x$ and the line $x = e$, in the first quadrant
7. The parabolas $x = y^2$ and $x = 2y - y^2$
8. The parabolas $x = y^2 - 1$ and $x = 2y^2 - 2$
9. The lines $y = x$, $y = x/3$, and $y = 2$
10. The lines $y = 1 - x$ and $y = 2$ and the curve $y = e^x$
11. The lines $y = 2x$, $y = x/2$, and $y = 3 - x$
12. The lines $y = x - 2$ and $y = -x$ and the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$

Identifying the Region of Integration

The integrals and sums of integrals in Exercises 13–18 give the areas of regions in the xy-plane. Sketch each region, label each bounding curve with its equation, and give the coordinates of the points where the curves intersect. Then find the area of the region.

13. $\displaystyle\int_0^6\int_{y^2/3}^{2y} dx\,dy$

14. $\displaystyle\int_0^3\int_{-x}^{x(2-x)} dy\,dx$

15. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_{\sin x}^{\cos x} dy\,dx$

16. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^2\int_{y^2}^{y+2} dx\,dy$

17. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^0\int_{-2x}^{1-x} dy\,dx + \int_0^2\int_{-x/2}^{1-x} dy\,dx$

18. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{x^2-4}^{0} dy\,dx + \int_0^4\int_0^{\sqrt{x}} dy\,dx$

Finding Average Values

19. Find the average value of $f(x, y) = \sin(x + y)$ over
    a. the rectangle $0 \le x \le \pi$, $0 \le y \le \pi$.
    b. the rectangle $0 \le x \le \pi$, $0 \le y \le \pi/2$.
20. Which do you think will be larger, the average value of $f(x, y) = xy$ over the square $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1$, or the average value of f over the quarter circle $x^2 + y^2 \le 1$ in the first quadrant? Calculate them to find out.
21. Find the average height of the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ over the square $0 \le x \le 2$, $0 \le y \le 2$.
22. Find the average value of $f(x, y) = 1/(xy)$ over the square $\ln 2 \le x \le 2\ln 2$, $\ln 2 \le y \le 2\ln 2$.

Theory and Examples

23. **Geometric area** Find the area of the region

$$R: 0 \le x \le 2,\ 2 - x \le y \le \sqrt{4 - x^2},$$

using **(a)** Fubini's Theorem, **(b)** simple geometry.

24. **Geometric area** Find the area of the circular washer with outer radius 2 and inner radius 1, using **(a)** Fubini's Theorem, **(b)** simple geometry.
25. **Bacterium population** If $f(x, y) = (10{,}000e^y)/(1 + |x|/2)$ represents the "population density" of a certain bacterium on the xy-plane, where x and y are measured in centimeters, find the total population of bacteria within the rectangle $-5 \le x \le 5$ and $-2 \le y \le 0$.
26. **Regional population** If $f(x, y) = 100\,(y + 1)$ represents the population density of a planar region on Earth, where x and y are measured in miles, find the number of people in the region bounded by the curves $x = y^2$ and $x = 2y - y^2$.
27. **Average temperature in Texas** According to the *Texas Almanac*, Texas has 254 counties and a National Weather Service station in each county. Assume that at time t_0, each of the 254 weather stations recorded the local temperature. Find a formula that would give a reasonable approximation of the average temperature in Texas at time t_0. Your answer should involve information that you would expect to be readily available in the *Texas Almanac*.
28. If $y = f(x)$ is a nonnegative continuous function over the closed interval $a \le x \le b$, show that the double integral definition of area for the closed plane region bounded by the graph of f, the vertical lines $x = a$ and $x = b$, and the x-axis agrees with the definition for area beneath the curve in Section 5.3.
29. Suppose $f(x, y)$ is continuous over a region R in the plane and that the area $A(R)$ of the region is defined. If there are constants m and M such that $m \le f(x, y) \le M$ for all $(x, y) \in R$, prove that

$$mA(R) \le \iint_R f(x, y)\,dA \le MA(R).$$

30. Suppose $f(x, y)$ is continuous and nonnegative over a region R in the plane with a defined area $A(R)$. If $\iint_R f(x, y)\,dA = 0$, prove that $f(x, y) = 0$ at every point $(x, y) \in R$.

We are interested in what happens as D is partitioned by smaller and smaller cells, so that Δx_k, Δy_k, Δz_k, and the norm of the partition $\|P\|$, the largest value among Δx_k, Δy_k, Δz_k, all approach zero. When a single limiting value is attained, no matter how the partitions and points (x_k, y_k, z_k) are chosen, we say that F is **integrable** over D. As before, it can be shown that when F is continuous and the bounding surface of D is formed from finitely many smooth surfaces joined together along finitely many smooth curves, then F is integrable. As $\|P\| \to 0$ and the number of cells n goes to ∞, the sums S_n approach a limit. We call this limit the **triple integral of *F* over *D*** and write

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} S_n = \iiint_D F(x, y, z)\, dV \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lim_{\|P\|\to 0} S_n = \iiint_D F(x, y, z)\, dx\, dy\, dz.$$

The regions D over which continuous functions are integrable are those having "reasonably smooth" boundaries.

Volume of a Region in Space

If F is the constant function whose value is 1, then the sums in Equation (1) reduce to

$$S_n = \sum F(x_k, y_k, z_k)\, \Delta V_k = \sum 1 \cdot \Delta V_k = \sum \Delta V_k .$$

As Δx_k, Δy_k, and Δz_k approach zero, the cells ΔV_k become smaller and more numerous and fill up more and more of D. We therefore define the volume of D to be the triple integral

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta V_k = \iiint_D dV.$$

DEFINITION The **volume** of a closed, bounded region D in space is

$$V = \iiint_D dV.$$

This definition is in agreement with our previous definitions of volume, although we omit the verification of this fact. As we see in a moment, this integral enables us to calculate the volumes of solids enclosed by curved surfaces. These are more general solids than the ones encountered before (Chapter 6 and Section 15.2).

Finding Limits of Integration in the Order *dz dy dx*

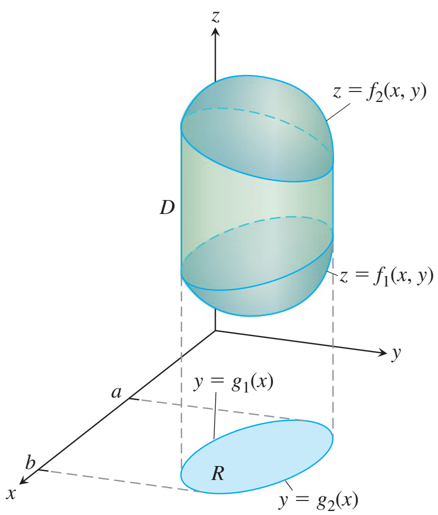
We evaluate a triple integral by applying a three-dimensional version of Fubini's Theorem (Section 15.2) to evaluate it by three repeated single integrations. As with double integrals, there is a geometric procedure for finding the limits of integration for these iterated integrals.

To evaluate

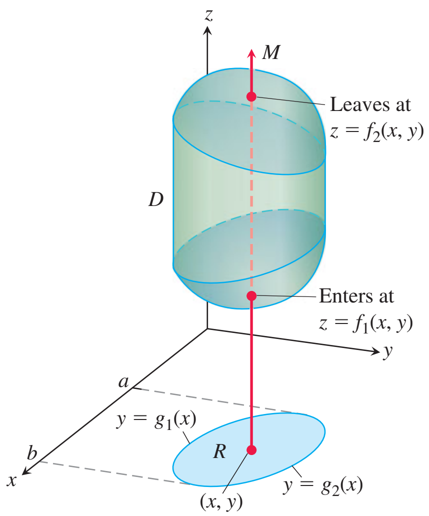
$$\iiint_D F(x, y, z)\, dV$$

over a region D, integrate first with respect to z, then with respect to y, and finally with respect to x. (You might choose a different order of integration, but the procedure is similar, as we illustrate in Example 2.)

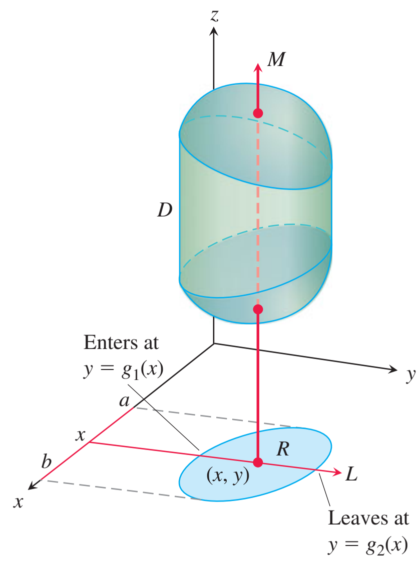
1. *Sketch.* Sketch the region D along with its "shadow" R (vertical projection) in the xy-plane. Label the upper and lower bounding surfaces of D and the upper and lower bounding curves of R.



2. *Find the z-limits of integration.* Draw a line M passing through a typical point (x, y) in R parallel to the z-axis. As z increases, M enters D at $z = f_1(x, y)$ and leaves at $z = f_2(x, y)$. These are the z-limits of integration.



3. *Find the y-limits of integration.* Draw a line L through (x, y) parallel to the y-axis. As y increases, L enters R at $y = g_1(x)$ and leaves at $y = g_2(x)$. These are the y-limits of integration.



4. *Find the x-limits of integration.* Choose x-limits that include all lines through R parallel to the y-axis ($x = a$ and $x = b$ in the preceding figure). These are the x-limits of integration. The integral is

$$\int_{x=a}^{x=b}\int_{y=g_1(x)}^{y=g_2(x)}\int_{z=f_1(x,y)}^{z=f_2(x,y)} F(x, y, z)\, dz\, dy\, dx.$$

Follow similar procedures if you change the order of integration. The "shadow" of region D lies in the plane of the last two variables with respect to which the iterated integration takes place.

The preceding procedure applies whenever a solid region D is bounded above and below by a surface, and when the "shadow" region R is bounded by a lower and upper curve. It does not apply to regions with complicated holes through them, although sometimes such regions can be subdivided into simpler regions for which the procedure does apply.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the volume of the region D enclosed by the surfaces $z = x^2 + 3y^2$ and $z = 8 - x^2 - y^2$.

Solution The volume is

$$V = \iiint_D dz\, dy\, dx,$$

the integral of $F(x, y, z) = 1$ over D. To find the limits of integration for evaluating the integral, we first sketch the region. The surfaces (Figure 15.31) intersect on the elliptical cylinder $x^2 + 3y^2 = 8 - x^2 - y^2$ or $x^2 + 2y^2 = 4$, $z > 0$. The boundary of the region R, the projection of D onto the xy-plane, is an ellipse with the same equation: $x^2 + 2y^2 = 4$. The "upper" boundary of R is the curve $y = \sqrt{(4 - x^2)/2}$. The lower boundary is the curve $y = -\sqrt{(4 - x^2)/2}$.

Now we find the z-limits of integration. The line M passing through a typical point (x, y) in R parallel to the z-axis enters D at $z = x^2 + 3y^2$ and leaves at $z = 8 - x^2 - y^2$.

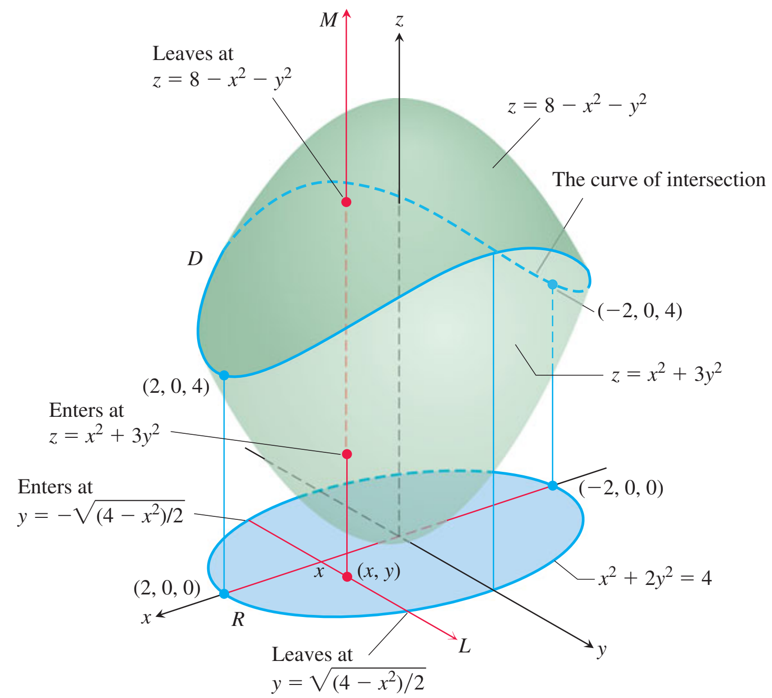


FIGURE 15.31 The volume of the region enclosed by two paraboloids, calculated in Example 1.

Next we find the y-limits of integration. The line L through (x, y) parallel to the y-axis enters R at $y = -\sqrt{(4 - x^2)/2}$ and leaves at $y = \sqrt{(4 - x^2)/2}$.

Finally we find the x-limits of integration. As L sweeps across R, the value of x varies from $x = -2$ at $(-2, 0, 0)$ to $x = 2$ at $(2, 0, 0)$. The volume of D is

$$\begin{aligned}
V &= \iiint_D dz\, dy\, dx \\
&= \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}}^{\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}} \int_{x^2+3y^2}^{8-x^2-y^2} dz\, dy\, dx \\
&= \int_{-2}^{2} \int_{-\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}}^{\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}} (8 - 2x^2 - 4y^2)\, dy\, dx \\
&= \int_{-2}^{2} \left[(8 - 2x^2)y - \frac{4}{3}y^3 \right]_{y=-\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}}^{y=\sqrt{(4-x^2)/2}} dx \\
&= \int_{-2}^{2} \left(2(8 - 2x^2)\sqrt{\frac{4 - x^2}{2}} - \frac{8}{3}\left(\frac{4 - x^2}{2}\right)^{3/2} \right) dx \\
&= \int_{-2}^{2} \left[8\left(\frac{4 - x^2}{2}\right)^{3/2} - \frac{8}{3}\left(\frac{4 - x^2}{2}\right)^{3/2} \right] dx = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3} \int_{-2}^{2} (4 - x^2)^{3/2}\, dx \\
&= 8\pi\sqrt{2}. \qquad \text{After integration with the substitution } x = 2 \sin u
\end{aligned}$$

In the next example, we project D onto the xz-plane instead of the xy-plane, to show how to use a different order of integration.

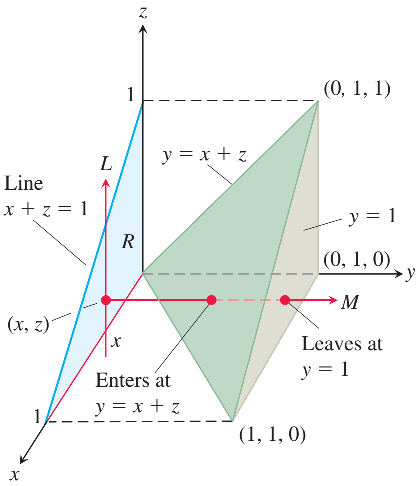


FIGURE 15.32 Finding the limits of integration for evaluating the triple integral of a function defined over the tetrahedron D (Examples 2 and 3).

EXAMPLE 2 Set up the limits of integration for evaluating the triple integral of a function $F(x, y, z)$ over the tetrahedron D with vertices $(0, 0, 0)$, $(1, 1, 0)$, $(0, 1, 0)$, and $(0, 1, 1)$. Use the order of integration $dy\, dz\, dx$.

Solution We sketch D along with its "shadow" R in the xz-plane (Figure 15.32). The upper (right-hand) bounding surface of D lies in the plane $y = 1$. The lower (left-hand) bounding surface lies in the plane $y = x + z$. The upper boundary of R is the line $z = 1 - x$. The lower boundary is the line $z = 0$.

First we find the y-limits of integration. The line through a typical point (x, z) in R parallel to the y-axis enters D at $y = x + z$ and leaves at $y = 1$.

Next we find the z-limits of integration. The line L through (x, z) parallel to the z-axis enters R at $z = 0$ and leaves at $z = 1 - x$.

Finally we find the x-limits of integration. As L sweeps across R, the value of x varies from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$. The integral is

$$\int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \int_{x+z}^{1} F(x, y, z)\, dy\, dz\, dx.$$

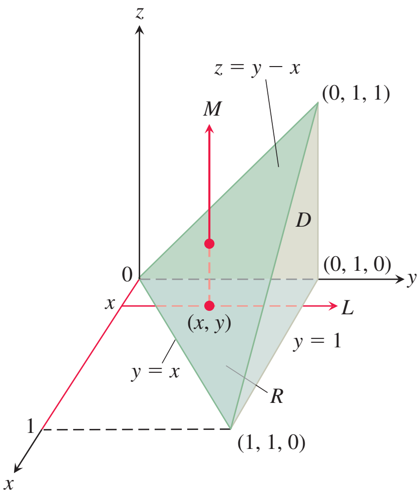


FIGURE 15.33 The tetrahedron in Example 3 showing how the limits of integration are found for the order $dz\, dy\, dx$.

EXAMPLE 3 Integrate $F(x, y, z) = 1$ over the tetrahedron D in Example 2 in the order $dz\, dy\, dx$, and then integrate in the order $dy\, dz\, dx$.

Solution First we find the z-limits of integration. A line M parallel to the z-axis through a typical point (x, y) in the xy-plane "shadow" enters the tetrahedron at $z = 0$ and exits through the upper plane where $z = y - x$ (Figure 15.33).

Next we find the y-limits of integration. On the xy-plane, where $z = 0$, the sloped side of the tetrahedron crosses the plane along the line $y = x$. A line L through (x, y) parallel to the y-axis enters the shadow in the xy-plane at $y = x$ and exits at $y = 1$ (Figure 15.33).

Finally we find the x-limits of integration. As the line L parallel to the y-axis in the previous step sweeps out the shadow, the value of x varies from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$ at the point (1, 1, 0) (see Figure 15.33). The integral is

$$\int_0^1 \int_x^1 \int_0^{y-x} F(x, y, z)\, dz\, dy\, dx.$$

For example, if $F(x, y, z) = 1$, we would find the volume of the tetrahedron to be

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_0^1 \int_x^1 \int_0^{y-x} dz\, dy\, dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_x^1 (y - x)\, dy\, dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[\frac{1}{2}y^2 - xy \right]_{y=x}^{y=1} dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left(\frac{1}{2} - x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 \right) dx \\ &= \left[\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{6}x^3 \right]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{1}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

We get the same result by integrating with the order $dy\, dz\, dx$. From Example 2,

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} \int_{x+z}^1 dy\, dz\, dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \int_0^{1-x} (1 - x - z)\, dz\, dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[(1 - x)z - \frac{1}{2}z^2 \right]_{z=0}^{z=1-x} dx \\ &= \int_0^1 \left[(1 - x)^2 - \frac{1}{2}(1 - x)^2 \right] dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 (1 - x)^2\, dx \\ &= -\frac{1}{6}(1 - x)^3 \Big]_0^1 = \frac{1}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

■

Average Value of a Function in Space

The average value of a function F over a region D in space is defined by the formula

$$\textbf{Average value} \text{ of } F \text{ over } D = \frac{1}{\text{volume of } D} \iiint_D F\, dV. \tag{2}$$

For example, if $F(x, y, z) = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$, then the average value of F over D is the average distance of points in D from the origin. If $F(x, y, z)$ is the temperature at (x, y, z) on a solid that occupies a region D in space, then the average value of F over D is the average temperature of the solid.

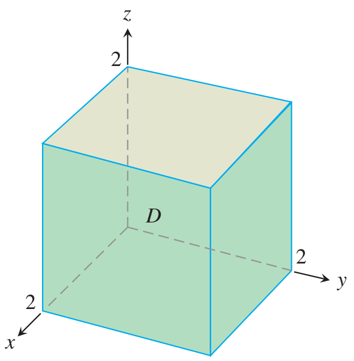


FIGURE 15.34 The region of integration in Example 4.

EXAMPLE 4 Find the average value of $F(x, y, z) = xyz$ throughout the cubical region D bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 2$, $y = 2$, and $z = 2$ in the first octant.

Solution We sketch the cube with enough detail to show the limits of integration (Figure 15.34). We then use Equation (2) to calculate the average value of F over the cube.

The volume of the region D is $(2)(2)(2) = 8$. The value of the integral of F over the cube is

$$\int_0^2\int_0^2\int_0^2 xyz\,dx\,dy\,dz = \int_0^2\int_0^2\left[\frac{x^2}{2}yz\right]_{x=0}^{x=2} dy\,dz = \int_0^2\int_0^2 2yz\,dy\,dz$$

$$= \int_0^2\left[y^2z\right]_{y=0}^{y=2} dz = \int_0^2 4z\,dz = \left[2z^2\right]_0^2 = 8.$$

With these values, Equation (2) gives

$$\text{Average value of } xyz \text{ over the cube} = \frac{1}{\text{volume}}\iiint_{\text{cube}} xyz\,dV = \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)(8) = 1.$$

In evaluating the integral, we chose the order $dx\,dy\,dz$, but any of the other five possible orders would have done as well. ■

Properties of Triple Integrals

Triple integrals have the same algebraic properties as double and single integrals. Simply replace the double integrals in the four properties given in Section 15.2, page 892, with triple integrals.

Exercises 15.5

Triple Integrals in Different Iteration Orders

1. Evaluate the integral in Example 2 taking $F(x, y, z) = 1$ to find the volume of the tetrahedron in the order $dz\,dx\,dy$.

2. **Volume of rectangular solid** Write six different iterated triple integrals for the volume of the rectangular solid in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 1$, $y = 2$, and $z = 3$. Evaluate one of the integrals.

3. **Volume of tetrahedron** Write six different iterated triple integrals for the volume of the tetrahedron cut from the first octant by the plane $6x + 3y + 2z = 6$. Evaluate one of the integrals.

4. **Volume of solid** Write six different iterated triple integrals for the volume of the region in the first octant enclosed by the cylinder $x^2 + z^2 = 4$ and the plane $y = 3$. Evaluate one of the integrals.

5. **Volume enclosed by paraboloids** Let D be the region bounded by the paraboloids $z = 8 - x^2 - y^2$ and $z = x^2 + y^2$. Write six different triple iterated integrals for the volume of D. Evaluate one of the integrals.

6. **Volume inside paraboloid beneath a plane** Let D be the region bounded by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$ and the plane $z = 2y$. Write triple iterated integrals in the order $dz\,dx\,dy$ and $dz\,dy\,dx$ that give the volume of D. Do not evaluate either integral.

Evaluating Triple Iterated Integrals

Evaluate the integrals in Exercises 7–20.

7. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^1\int_0^1 (x^2 + y^2 + z^2)\,dz\,dy\,dx$

8. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\sqrt{2}}\int_0^{3y}\int_{x^2+3y^2}^{8-x^2-y^2} dz\,dx\,dy$

9. $\displaystyle\int_1^e\int_1^{e^2}\int_1^{e^3} \frac{1}{xyz}\,dx\,dy\,dz$

10. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{3-3x}\int_0^{3-3x-y} dz\,dy\,dx$

11. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/6}\int_0^1\int_{-2}^3 y\sin z\,dx\,dy\,dz$

12. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1\int_0^1\int_0^2 (x + y + z)\,dy\,dx\,dz$

13. $\displaystyle\int_0^3\int_0^{\sqrt{9-x^2}}\int_0^{\sqrt{9-x^2}} dz\,dy\,dx$

14. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{-\sqrt{4-y^2}}^{\sqrt{4-y^2}}\int_0^{2x+y} dz\,dx\,dy$

15. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{2-x}\int_0^{2-x-y} dz\,dy\,dx$

16. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{1-x^2}\int_3^{4-x^2-y} x\,dz\,dy\,dx$

17. $\displaystyle\int_0^\pi\int_0^\pi\int_0^\pi \cos(u + v + w)\,du\,dv\,dw$ (uvw-space)

18. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_1^{\sqrt{e}}\int_1^e se^s\ln r\,\frac{(\ln t)^2}{t}\,dt\,dr\,ds$ (rst-space)

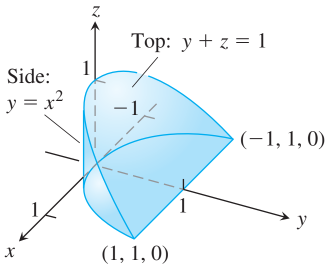
19. $\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{\ln \sec v}\int_{-\infty}^{2t} e^x\,dx\,dt\,dv \quad (tvx\text{-space})$

20. $\int_0^7\int_0^2\int_0^{\sqrt{4-q^2}} \frac{q}{r+1}\,dp\,dq\,dr \quad (pqr\text{-space})$

Finding Equivalent Iterated Integrals

21. Here is the region of integration of the integral

$$\int_{-1}^{1}\int_{x^2}^{1}\int_0^{1-y} dz\,dy\,dx.$$



Rewrite the integral as an equivalent iterated integral in the order

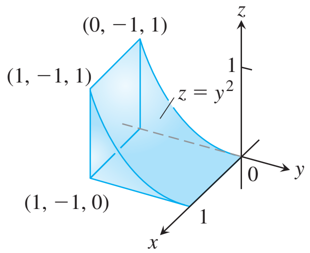
a. $dy\,dz\,dx$ **b.** $dy\,dx\,dz$

c. $dx\,dy\,dz$ **d.** $dx\,dz\,dy$

e. $dz\,dx\,dy$.

22. Here is the region of integration of the integral

$$\int_0^1\int_{-1}^0\int_0^{y^2} dz\,dy\,dx.$$



Rewrite the integral as an equivalent iterated integral in the order

a. $dy\,dz\,dx$ **b.** $dy\,dx\,dz$

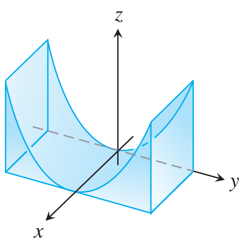
c. $dx\,dy\,dz$ **d.** $dx\,dz\,dy$

e. $dz\,dx\,dy$.

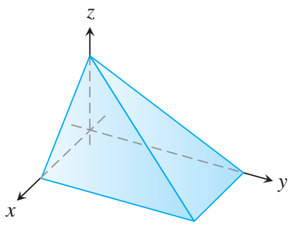
Finding Volumes Using Triple Integrals

Find the volumes of the regions in Exercises 23–36.

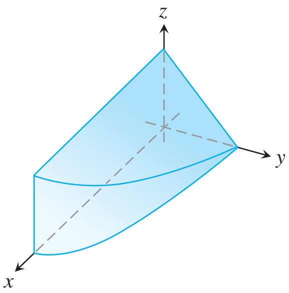
23. The region between the cylinder $z = y^2$ and the xy-plane that is bounded by the planes $x = 0, x = 1, y = -1, y = 1$



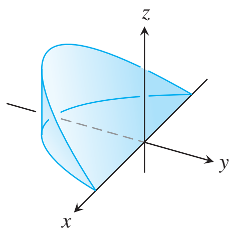
24. The region in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x + z = 1, y + 2z = 2$



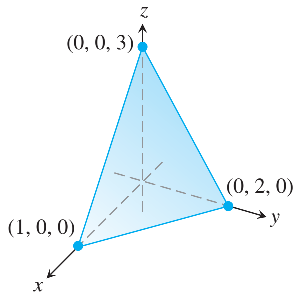
25. The region in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes, the plane $y + z = 2$, and the cylinder $x = 4 - y^2$



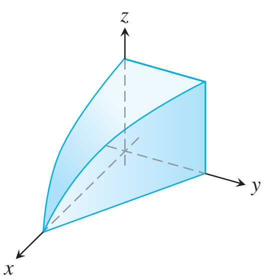
26. The wedge cut from the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ by the planes $z = -y$ and $z = 0$



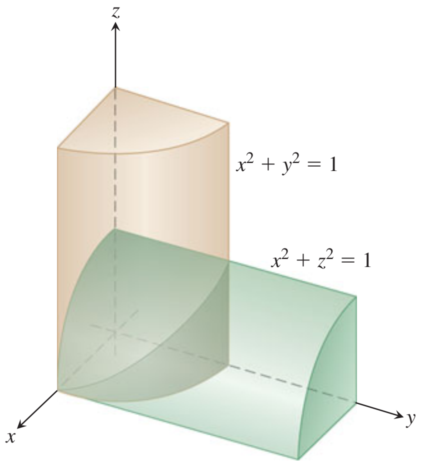
27. The tetrahedron in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the plane passing through (1, 0, 0), (0, 2, 0), and (0, 0, 3)



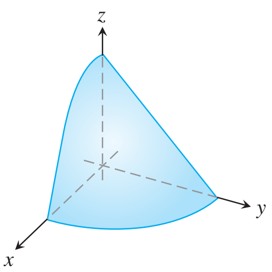
28. The region in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes, the plane $y = 1 - x$, and the surface $z = \cos(\pi x/2), 0 \le x \le 1$



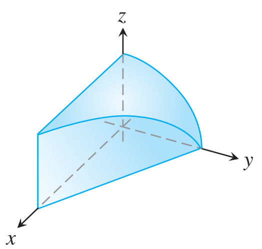
29. The region common to the interiors of the cylinders $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and $x^2 + z^2 = 1$, one-eighth of which is shown in the accompanying figure



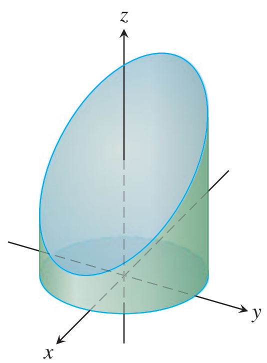
30. The region in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the surface $z = 4 - x^2 - y$



31. The region in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes, the plane $x + y = 4$, and the cylinder $y^2 + 4z^2 = 16$



32. The region cut from the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ by the plane $z = 0$ and the plane $x + z = 3$



33. The region between the planes $x + y + 2z = 2$ and $2x + 2y + z = 4$ in the first octant

34. The finite region bounded by the planes $z = x$, $x + z = 8$, $z = y$, $y = 8$, and $z = 0$

35. The region cut from the solid elliptical cylinder $x^2 + 4y^2 \le 4$ by the xy-plane and the plane $z = x + 2$

36. The region bounded in back by the plane $x = 0$, on the front and sides by the parabolic cylinder $x = 1 - y^2$, on the top by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$, and on the bottom by the xy-plane

Average Values

In Exercises 37–40, find the average value of $F(x, y, z)$ over the given region.

37. $F(x, y, z) = x^2 + 9$ over the cube in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 2$, $y = 2$, and $z = 2$

38. $F(x, y, z) = x + y - z$ over the rectangular solid in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 1$, $y = 1$, and $z = 2$

39. $F(x, y, z) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2$ over the cube in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 1$, $y = 1$, and $z = 1$

40. $F(x, y, z) = xyz$ over the cube in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 2$, $y = 2$, and $z = 2$

Changing the Order of Integration

Evaluate the integrals in Exercises 41–44 by changing the order of integration in an appropriate way.

41. $\displaystyle\int_0^4\int_0^1\int_{2y}^2 \frac{4\cos(x^2)}{2\sqrt{z}}\,dx\,dy\,dz$

42. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^1\int_{x^2}^1 12xze^{zy^2}\,dy\,dx\,dz$

43. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_{\sqrt[3]{z}}^1\int_0^{\ln 3} \frac{\pi e^{2x}\sin \pi y^2}{y^2}\,dx\,dy\,dz$

44. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_0^{4-x^2}\int_0^x \frac{\sin 2z}{4-z}\,dy\,dz\,dx$

Theory and Examples

45. Finding an upper limit of an iterated integral Solve for a:

$$\int_0^1\int_0^{4-a-x^2}\int_a^{4-x^2-y} dz\,dy\,dx = \frac{4}{15}.$$

46. Ellipsoid For what value of c is the volume of the ellipsoid $x^2 + (y/2)^2 + (z/c)^2 = 1$ equal to 8π?

47. Minimizing a triple integral What domain D in space minimizes the value of the integral

$$\iiint_D (4x^2 + 4y^2 + z^2 - 4)\,dV\,?$$

Give reasons for your answer.

48. Maximizing a triple integral What domain D in space maximizes the value of the integral

$$\iiint_D (1 - x^2 - y^2 - z^2)\,dV?$$

Give reasons for your answer.

we see that it still converges. For a general series with both positive and negative terms, we can apply the tests for convergence studied before to the series of absolute values of its terms. In doing so, we are led naturally to the following concept.

DEFINITION A series $\sum a_n$ **converges absolutely** (is **absolutely convergent**) if the corresponding series of absolute values, $\sum |a_n|$, converges.

So the geometric series (1) is absolutely convergent. We observed, too, that it is also convergent. This situation is always true: An absolutely convergent series is convergent as well, which we now prove.

THEOREM 12—The Absolute Convergence Test If $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.

Proof For each n,

$$-|a_n| \le a_n \le |a_n|, \qquad \text{so} \qquad 0 \le a_n + |a_n| \le 2|a_n|.$$

If $\Sigma_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, then $\Sigma_{n=1}^{\infty} 2|a_n|$ converges and, by the Direct Comparison Test, the nonnegative series $\Sigma_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n + |a_n|)$ converges. The equality $a_n = (a_n + |a_n|) - |a_n|$ now lets us express $\Sigma_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ as the difference of two convergent series:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n + |a_n| - |a_n|) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n + |a_n|) - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|.$$

Therefore, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges. ■

EXAMPLE 1 This example gives two series that converge absolutely.

(a) For $\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \frac{1}{n^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{9} - \frac{1}{16} + \cdots$, the corresponding series of absolute values is the convergent series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} = 1 + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{16} + \cdots.$$

The original series converges because it converges absolutely.

(b) For $\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin n}{n^2} = \frac{\sin 1}{1} + \frac{\sin 2}{4} + \frac{\sin 3}{9} + \cdots$, which contains both positive and negative terms, the corresponding series of absolute values is

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \frac{\sin n}{n^2} \right| = \frac{|\sin 1|}{1} + \frac{|\sin 2|}{4} + \cdots,$$

which converges by comparison with $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (1/n^2)$ because $|\sin n| \le 1$ for every n. The original series converges absolutely; therefore it converges. ■

Caution Be careful when using Theorem 12. A convergent series need *not* converge absolutely, as you will see in the next section.

The Ratio Test

The Ratio Test measures the rate of growth (or decline) of a series by examining the ratio a_{n+1}/a_n. For a geometric series $\sum ar^n$, this rate is a constant $((ar^{n+1})/(ar^n) = r)$, and the series converges if and only if its ratio is less than 1 in absolute value. The Ratio Test is a powerful rule extending that result.

THEOREM 13—The Ratio Test Let $\sum a_n$ be any series and suppose that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = \rho.$$

Then **(a)** the series *converges absolutely* if $\rho < 1$, **(b)** the series *diverges* if $\rho > 1$ or ρ is infinite, **(c)** the test is *inconclusive* if $\rho = 1$.

Proof

(a) $\rho < 1$. Let r be a number between ρ and 1. Then the number $\epsilon = r - \rho$ is positive. Since

$$\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| \to \rho,$$

$|a_{n+1}/a_n|$ must lie within ϵ of ρ when n is large enough, say, for all $n \geq N$. In particular,

$$\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| < \rho + \epsilon = r, \qquad \text{when } n \geq N.$$

That is,

$$\begin{aligned}
|a_{N+1}| &< r|a_N|,\\
|a_{N+2}| &< r|a_{N+1}| < r^2|a_N|,\\
|a_{N+3}| &< r|a_{N+2}| < r^3|a_N|,\\
&\vdots\\
|a_{N+m}| &< r|a_{N+m-1}| < r^m|a_N|.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore.

$$\sum_{m=N}^{\infty}|a_m| = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty}|a_{N+m}| \leq \sum_{m=0}^{\infty}|a_N|\, r^m = |a_N|\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} r^m.$$

The geometric series on the right-hand side converges because $0 < r < 1$, so the series of absolute values $\sum_{m=N}^{\infty}|a_m|$ converges by the Comparison Test. Because adding or deleting finitely many terms in a series does not affect its convergence or divergence property, the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}|a_n|$ also converges. That is, the series $\sum a_n$ is absolutely convergent.

(b) $1 < \rho \leq \infty$. From some index M on,

$$\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| > 1 \qquad \text{and} \qquad |a_M| < |a_{M+1}| < |a_{M+2}| < \cdots.$$

The terms of the series do not approach zero as n becomes infinite, and the series diverges by the nth-Term Test.

(c) $\rho = 1$. The two series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sum_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{n^2}$$

show that some other test for convergence must be used when $\rho = 1$.

$$\text{For } \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}: \quad \left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = \frac{1/(n+1)}{1/n} = \frac{n}{n+1} \to 1.$$

$$\text{For } \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}: \quad \left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = \frac{1/(n+1)^2}{1/n^2} = \left(\frac{n}{n+1}\right)^2 \to 1^2 = 1.$$

In both cases, $\rho = 1$, yet the first series diverges, whereas the second converges. ■

The Ratio Test is often effective when the terms of a series contain factorials of expressions involving n or expressions raised to a power involving n.

EXAMPLE 2 Investigate the convergence of the following series.

(a) $\displaystyle\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^n + 5}{3^n}$ **(b)** $\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(2n)!}{n!n!}$ **(c)** $\displaystyle\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{4^n n!n!}{(2n)!}$

Solution We apply the Ratio Test to each series.

(a) For the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^n + 5)/3^n$,

$$\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = \frac{(2^{n+1} + 5)/3^{n+1}}{(2^n + 5)/3^n} = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{2^{n+1} + 5}{2^n + 5} = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \left(\frac{2 + 5 \cdot 2^{-n}}{1 + 5 \cdot 2^{-n}}\right) \to \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{2}{1} = \frac{2}{3}.$$

The series converges absolutely (and thus converges) because $\rho = 2/3$ is less than 1. This does *not* mean that $2/3$ is the sum of the series. In fact,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^n + 5}{3^n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{5}{3^n} = \frac{1}{1 - (2/3)} + \frac{5}{1 - (1/3)} = \frac{21}{2}.$$

(b) If $a_n = \dfrac{(2n)!}{n!n!}$, then $a_{n+1} = \dfrac{(2n+2)!}{(n+1)!(n+1)!}$ and

$$\begin{aligned}\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| &= \frac{n!n!(2n+2)(2n+1)(2n)!}{(n+1)!(n+1)!(2n)!} \\ &= \frac{(2n+2)(2n+1)}{(n+1)(n+1)} = \frac{4n+2}{n+1} \to 4.\end{aligned}$$

The series diverges because $\rho = 4$ is greater than 1.

(c) If $a_n = 4^n n!n!/(2n)!$, then

$$\begin{aligned}\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| &= \frac{4^{n+1}(n+1)!(n+1)!}{(2n+2)(2n+1)(2n)!} \cdot \frac{(2n)!}{4^n n!n!} \\ &= \frac{4(n+1)(n+1)}{(2n+2)(2n+1)} = \frac{2(n+1)}{2n+1} \to 1.\end{aligned}$$

Because the limit is $\rho = 1$, we cannot decide from the Ratio Test whether the series converges. When we notice that $a_{n+1}/a_n = (2n+2)/(2n+1)$, we conclude that a_{n+1} is always greater than a_n because $(2n+2)/(2n+1)$ is always greater than 1. Therefore, all terms are greater than or equal to $a_1 = 2$, and the nth term does not approach zero as $n \to \infty$. The series diverges. ■

The Root Test

The convergence tests we have so far for Σa_n work best when the formula for a_n is relatively simple. However, consider the series with the terms

$$a_n = \begin{cases} n/2^n, & n \text{ odd} \\ 1/2^n, & n \text{ even.} \end{cases}$$

To investigate convergence we write out several terms of the series:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n = \frac{1}{2^1} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{3}{2^3} + \frac{1}{2^4} + \frac{5}{2^5} + \frac{1}{2^6} + \frac{7}{2^7} + \cdots$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{16} + \frac{5}{32} + \frac{1}{64} + \frac{7}{128} + \cdots.$$

Clearly, this is not a geometric series. The nth term approaches zero as $n \to \infty$, so the nth-Term Test does not tell us if the series diverges. The Integral Test does not look promising. The Ratio Test produces

$$\left|\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}\right| = \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{2n}, & n \text{ odd} \\[2ex] \dfrac{n+1}{2}, & n \text{ even} \end{cases}$$

As $n \to \infty$, the ratio is alternately small and large and has no limit. However, we will see that the following test establishes that the series converges.

THEOREM 14—The Root Test Let $\sum a_n$ be any series and suppose that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} = \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = \rho.$$

Then **(a)** the series *converges absolutely* if $\rho < 1$, **(b)** the series *diverges* if $\rho > 1$ or ρ is infinite, **(c)** the test is *inconclusive* if $\rho = 1$.

Proof

(a) $\boldsymbol{\rho < 1}$**.** Choose an $\epsilon > 0$ so small that $\rho + \epsilon < 1$. Since $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} \to \rho$, the terms $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|}$ eventually get to within ϵ of ρ. So there exists an index M such that

$$\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < \rho + \epsilon \qquad \text{when } n \geq M.$$

Then it is also true that

$$|a_n| < (\rho + \epsilon)^n \qquad \text{for } n \geq M.$$

Now, $\sum_{n=M}^{\infty} (\rho + \epsilon)^n$, a geometric series with ratio $(\rho + \epsilon) < 1$, converges. By the Comparison Test, $\sum_{n=M}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, from which it follows that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| = |a_1| + \cdots + |a_{M-1}| + \sum_{n=M}^{\infty} |a_n|$$

converges. Therefore, $\sum a_n$ converges absolutely.

(b) $\boldsymbol{1 < \rho \leq \infty}$**.** For all indices beyond some integer M, we have $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} > 1$, so that $|a_n| > 1$ for $n > M$. The terms of the series do not converge to zero. The series diverges by the nth-Term Test.

(c) $\boldsymbol{\rho = 1}$**.** The series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (1/n)$ and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (1/n^2)$ show that the test is not conclusive when $\rho = 1$. The first series diverges and the second converges, but in both cases $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} \to 1$. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Consider again the series with terms $a_n = \begin{cases} n/2^n, & n \text{ odd} \\ 1/2^n, & n \text{ even.} \end{cases}$

Does $\sum a_n$ converge?

Solution We apply the Root Test, finding that

$$\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = \begin{cases} \sqrt[n]{n}/2, & n \text{ odd} \\ 1/2, & n \text{ even}. \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{1}{2} \le \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} \le \frac{\sqrt[n]{n}}{2}.$$

Since $\sqrt[n]{n} \to 1$ (Section 10.1, Theorem 5), we have $\lim_{n\to\infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = 1/2$ by the Sandwich Theorem. The limit is less than 1, so the series converges absolutely by the Root Test. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Which of the following series converge, and which diverge?

(a) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^2}{2^n}$ **(b)** $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^n}{n^3}$ **(c)** $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{1+n}\right)^n$

Solution We apply the Root Test to each series, noting that each series has positive terms.

(a) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^2}{2^n}$ converges because $\sqrt[n]{\frac{n^2}{2^n}} = \frac{\sqrt[n]{n^2}}{\sqrt[n]{2^n}} = \frac{\left(\sqrt[n]{n}\right)^2}{2} \to \frac{1^2}{2} < 1.$

(b) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^n}{n^3}$ diverges because $\sqrt[n]{\frac{2^n}{n^3}} = \frac{2}{\left(\sqrt[n]{n}\right)^3} \to \frac{2}{1^3} > 1.$

(c) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{1+n}\right)^n$ converges because $\sqrt[n]{\left(\frac{1}{1+n}\right)^n} = \frac{1}{1+n} \to 0 < 1.$ ■

Exercises 10.5

Using the Ratio Test

In Exercises 1–8, use the Ratio Test to determine if each series converges absolutely or diverges.

1. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^n}{n!}$
2. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{n+2}{3^n}$
3. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n-1)!}{(n+1)^2}$
4. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^{n+1}}{n3^{n-1}}$
5. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^4}{(-4)^n}$
6. $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{3^{n+2}}{\ln n}$
7. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{n^2(n+2)!}{n!\, 3^{2n}}$
8. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n5^n}{(2n+3)\ln(n+1)}$

Using the Root Test

In Exercises 9–16, use the Root Test to determine if each series converges absolutely or diverges.

9. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{7}{(2n+5)^n}$
10. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{4^n}{(3n)^n}$
11. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4n+3}{3n-5}\right)^n$
12. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(-\ln\left(e^2 + \frac{1}{n}\right)\right)^{n+1}$
13. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{-8}{(3+(1/n))^{2n}}$
14. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sin^n\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$
15. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right)^{n^2}$

    (*Hint:* $\lim_{n\to\infty} (1 + x/n)^n = e^x$)
16. $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^{1+n}}$

Determining Convergence or Divergence

In Exercises 17–44, use any method to determine if the series converges or diverges. Give reasons for your answer.

17. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{\sqrt{2}}}{2^n}$
18. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n n^2 e^{-n}$
19. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n!(-e)^{-n}$
20. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n!}{10^n}$
21. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^{10}}{10^n}$
22. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{n-2}{n}\right)^n$

23. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2+(-1)^n}{1.25^n}$

24. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-2)^n}{3^n}$

25. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n\left(1-\frac{3}{n}\right)^n$

26. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(1-\frac{1}{3n}\right)^n$

27. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\ln n}{n^3}$

28. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-\ln n)^n}{n^n}$

29. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n}-\frac{1}{n^2}\right)$

30. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n}-\frac{1}{n^2}\right)^n$

31. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^n}{n^e}$

32. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n\ln n}{(-2)^n}$

33. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n+1)(n+2)}{n!}$

34. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} e^{-n}(n^3)$

35. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n+3)!}{3!n!3^n}$

36. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n2^n(n+1)!}{3^n n!}$

37. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n!}{(2n+1)!}$

38. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n!}{(-n)^n}$

39. $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{-n}{(\ln n)^n}$

40. $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{n}{(\ln n)^{(n/2)}}$

41. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n!\ln n}{n(n+2)!}$

42. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-3)^n}{n^3 2^n}$

43. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!}$

44. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(2n+3)(2^n+3)}{3^n+2}$

Recursively Defined Terms Which of the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ defined by the formulas in Exercises 45–54 converge, and which diverge? Give reasons for your answers.

45. $a_1 = 2, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1+\sin n}{n} a_n$

46. $a_1 = 1, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1+\tan^{-1} n}{n} a_n$

47. $a_1 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{3n-1}{2n+5} a_n$

48. $a_1 = 3, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{n}{n+1} a_n$

49. $a_1 = 2, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{2}{n} a_n$

50. $a_1 = 5, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{\sqrt[n]{n}}{2} a_n$

51. $a_1 = 1, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{1+\ln n}{n} a_n$

52. $a_1 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad a_{n+1} = \frac{n+\ln n}{n+10} a_n$

53. $a_1 = \frac{1}{3}, \quad a_{n+1} = \sqrt[n]{a_n}$

54. $a_1 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad a_{n+1} = (a_n)^{n+1}$

Convergence or Divergence

Which of the series in Exercises 55–62 converge, and which diverge? Give reasons for your answers.

55. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^n n! n!}{(2n)!}$

56. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n (3n)!}{n!(n+1)!(n+2)!}$

57. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n!)^n}{(n^n)^2}$

58. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(n!)^n}{n^{(n^2)}}$

59. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^n}{2^{(n^2)}}$

60. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^n}{(2^n)^2}$

61. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1\cdot 3\cdot \cdots \cdot (2n-1)}{4^n 2^n n!}$

62. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1\cdot 3\cdot \cdots \cdot (2n-1)}{[2\cdot 4\cdot \cdots \cdot (2n)](3^n+1)}$

Theory and Examples

63. Neither the Ratio Test nor the Root Test helps with p-series. Try them on

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^p}$$

and show that both tests fail to provide information about convergence.

64. Show that neither the Ratio Test nor the Root Test provides information about the convergence of

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(\ln n)^p} \qquad (p \text{ constant}).$$

65. Let $a_n = \begin{cases} n/2^n, & \text{if } n \text{ is a prime number} \\ 1/2^n, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

Does $\sum a_n$ converge? Give reasons for your answer.

66. Show that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2^{(n^2)}/n!$ diverges. Recall from the Laws of Exponents that $2^{(n^2)} = (2^n)^n$.

10.6 Alternating Series and Conditional Convergence

A series in which the terms are alternately positive and negative is an **alternating series**. Here are three examples:

$$1-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{3}-\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{5}-\cdots+\frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n}+\cdots \tag{1}$$

$$-2+1-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{4}-\frac{1}{8}+\cdots+\frac{(-1)^n 4}{2^n}+\cdots \tag{2}$$

$$1-2+3-4+5-6+\cdots+(-1)^{n+1}n+\cdots \tag{3}$$

b. Find the first four terms of a series for sec x tan x. For what values of x should the series converge?

c. Check your result in part (b) by multiplying the series for sec x by the series given for tan x in Exercise 57.

59. Uniqueness of convergent power series

a. Show that if two power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ and $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n$ are convergent and equal for all values of x in an open interval $(-c, c)$, then $a_n = b_n$ for every n. (*Hint:* Let $f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n x^n$. Differentiate term by term to show that a_n and b_n both equal $f^{(n)}(0)/(n!)$.)

b. Show that if $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = 0$ for all x in an open interval $(-c, c)$, then $a_n = 0$ for every n.

60. The sum of the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}(n^2/2^n)$ To find the sum of this series, express $1/(1 - x)$ as a geometric series, differentiate both sides of the resulting equation with respect to x, multiply both sides of the result by x, differentiate again, multiply by x again, and set x equal to $1/2$. What do you get?

10.8 Taylor and Maclaurin Series

We have seen how geometric series can be used to generate a power series for a few functions having a special form, like $f(x) = 1/(1 - x)$ or $g(x) = 3/(x - 2)$. Now we expand our capability to represent a function with a power series. This section shows how functions that are infinitely differentiable generate power series called *Taylor series*. In many cases, these series provide useful polynomial approximations of the generating functions. Because they are used routinely by mathematicians and scientists, Taylor series are considered one of the most important themes of infinite series.

Series Representations

We know from Theorem 21 that within its interval of convergence I the sum of a power series is a continuous function with derivatives of all orders. But what about the other way around? If a function $f(x)$ has derivatives of all orders on an interval, can it be expressed as a power series on at least part of that interval? And if it can, what are its coefficients?

We can answer the last question readily if we assume that $f(x)$ is the sum of a power series about $x = a$,

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x - a)^n \\ &= a_0 + a_1(x - a) + a_2(x - a)^2 + \cdots + a_n(x - a)^n + \cdots \end{aligned}$$

with a positive radius of convergence. By repeated term-by-term differentiation within the interval of convergence I, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= a_1 + 2a_2(x - a) + 3a_3(x - a)^2 + \cdots + na_n(x - a)^{n-1} + \cdots, \\ f''(x) &= 1 \cdot 2a_2 + 2 \cdot 3a_3(x - a) + 3 \cdot 4a_4(x - a)^2 + \cdots, \\ f'''(x) &= 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3a_3 + 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4a_4(x - a) + 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5a_5(x - a)^2 + \cdots, \end{aligned}$$

with the nth derivative, for all n, being

$$f^{(n)}(x) = n!a_n + \text{a sum of terms with } (x - a) \text{ as a factor.}$$

Since these equations all hold at $x = a$, we have

$$f'(a) = a_1, \qquad f''(a) = 1 \cdot 2a_2, \qquad f'''(a) = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3a_3,$$

and, in general,

$$f^{(n)}(a) = n!a_n.$$

These formulas reveal a pattern in the coefficients of any power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n(x-a)^n$ that converges to the values of f on I ("represents f on I"). If there *is* such a series (still an open question), then there is only one such series, and its nth coefficient is

$$a_n = \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}.$$

If f has a series representation, then the series must be

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n + \cdots. \quad (1)$$

But if we start with an arbitrary function f that is infinitely differentiable on an interval containing $x = a$ and use it to generate the series in Equation (1), will the series then converge to $f(x)$ at each x in the interval of convergence? The answer is maybe—for some functions it will but for other functions it will not (as we will see in Example 4).

Taylor and Maclaurin Series

The series on the right-hand side of Equation (1) is the most important and useful series we will study in this chapter.

HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHIES
Brook Taylor
(1685–1731)
Colin Maclaurin
(1698–1746)

DEFINITIONS Let f be a function with derivatives of all orders throughout some interval containing a as an interior point. Then the **Taylor series generated by f at $x = a$** is

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n + \cdots.$$

The **Maclaurin series of f** is the Taylor series generated by f at $x = 0$, or

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(0)}{k!}x^k = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \cdots.$$

The Maclaurin series generated by f is often just called the Taylor series of f.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the Taylor series generated by $f(x) = 1/x$ at $a = 2$. Where, if anywhere, does the series converge to $1/x$?

Solution We need to find $f(2), f'(2), f''(2), \ldots$. Taking derivatives we get

$$f(x) = x^{-1}, \quad f'(x) = -x^{-2}, \quad f''(x) = 2!x^{-3}, \quad \cdots, \quad f^{(n)}(x) = (-1)^n n! x^{-(n+1)},$$

so that

$$f(2) = 2^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad f'(2) = -\frac{1}{2^2}, \quad \frac{f''(2)}{2!} = 2^{-3} = \frac{1}{2^3}, \quad \cdots, \quad \frac{f^{(n)}(2)}{n!} = \frac{(-1)^n}{2^{n+1}}.$$

The Taylor series is

$$f(2) + f'(2)(x-2) + \frac{f''(2)}{2!}(x-2)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(2)}{n!}(x-2)^n + \cdots$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{(x-2)}{2^2} + \frac{(x-2)^2}{2^3} - \cdots + (-1)^n\frac{(x-2)^n}{2^{n+1}} + \cdots.$$

This is a geometric series with first term $1/2$ and ratio $r = -(x-2)/2$. It converges absolutely for $|x-2| < 2$ and its sum is

$$\frac{1/2}{1+(x-2)/2} = \frac{1}{2+(x-2)} = \frac{1}{x}.$$

In this example the Taylor series generated by $f(x) = 1/x$ at $a = 2$ converges to $1/x$ for $|x-2| < 2$ or $0 < x < 4$. ■

Taylor Polynomials

The linearization of a differentiable function f at a point a is the polynomial of degree one given by

$$P_1(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a).$$

In Section 3.11 we used this linearization to approximate $f(x)$ at values of x near a. If f has derivatives of higher order at a, then it has higher-order polynomial approximations as well, one for each available derivative. These polynomials are called the Taylor polynomials of f.

DEFINITION Let f be a function with derivatives of order k for $k = 1, 2, \dots, N$ in some interval containing a as an interior point. Then for any integer n from 0 through N, the **Taylor polynomial of order *n*** generated by f at $x = a$ is the polynomial

$$P_n(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n.$$

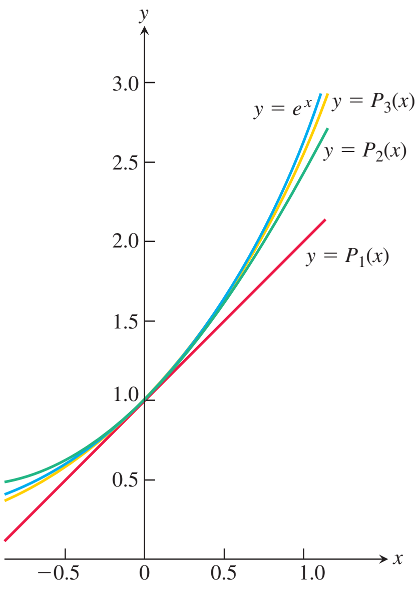


FIGURE 10.17 The graph of $f(x) = e^x$ and its Taylor polynomials

$P_1(x) = 1 + x$

$P_2(x) = 1 + x + (x^2/2!)$

$P_3(x) = 1 + x + (x^2/2!) + (x^3/3!).$

Notice the very close agreement near the center $x = 0$ (Example 2).

We speak of a Taylor polynomial of *order n* rather than *degree n* because $f^{(n)}(a)$ may be zero. The first two Taylor polynomials of $f(x) = \cos x$ at $x = 0$, for example, are $P_0(x) = 1$ and $P_1(x) = 1$. The first-order Taylor polynomial has degree zero, not one.

Just as the linearization of f at $x = a$ provides the best linear approximation of f in the neighborhood of a, the higher-order Taylor polynomials provide the "best" polynomial approximations of their respective degrees. (See Exercise 40.)

EXAMPLE 2 Find the Taylor series and the Taylor polynomials generated by $f(x) = e^x$ at $x = 0$.

Solution Since $f^{(n)}(x) = e^x$ and $f^{(n)}(0) = 1$ for every $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, the Taylor series generated by f at $x = 0$ (see Figure 10.17) is

$$f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \cdots$$

$$= 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \cdots$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!}.$$

This is also the Maclaurin series for e^x. In the next section we will see that the series converges to e^x at every x.

The Taylor polynomial of order n at $x = 0$ is

$$P_n(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!}.$$

EXAMPLE 3 Find the Taylor series and Taylor polynomials generated by $f(x) = \cos x$ at $x = 0$.

Solution The cosine and its derivatives are

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \cos x, & f'(x) &= -\sin x, \\ f''(x) &= -\cos x, & f^{(3)}(x) &= \sin x, \\ &\vdots & &\vdots \\ f^{(2n)}(x) &= (-1)^n \cos x, & f^{(2n+1)}(x) &= (-1)^{n+1} \sin x. \end{aligned}$$

At $x = 0$, the cosines are 1 and the sines are 0, so

$$f^{(2n)}(0) = (-1)^n, \qquad f^{(2n+1)}(0) = 0.$$

The Taylor series generated by f at 0 is

$$\begin{aligned} f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{f'''(0)}{3!}x^3 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \cdots \\ = 1 + 0 \cdot x - \frac{x^2}{2!} + 0 \cdot x^3 + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \cdots \\ = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{(2k)!}. \end{aligned}$$

This is also the Maclaurin series for $\cos x$. Notice that only even powers of x occur in the Taylor series generated by the cosine function, which is consistent with the fact that it is an even function. In Section 10.9, we will see that the series converges to $\cos x$ at every x.

Because $f^{(2n+1)}(0) = 0$, the Taylor polynomials of orders $2n$ and $2n + 1$ are identical:

$$P_{2n}(x) = P_{2n+1}(x) = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \cdots + (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}.$$

Figure 10.18 shows how well these polynomials approximate $f(x) = \cos x$ near $x = 0$. Only the right-hand portions of the graphs are given because the graphs are symmetric about the y-axis.

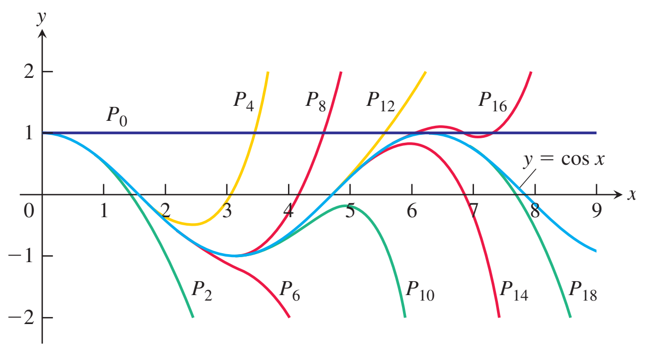


FIGURE 10.18 The polynomials

$$P_{2n}(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{(2k)!}$$

converge to $\cos x$ as $n \to \infty$. We can deduce the behavior of $\cos x$ arbitrarily far away solely from knowing the values of the cosine and its derivatives at $x = 0$ (Example 3).

EXAMPLE 4 It can be shown (though not easily) that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x = 0 \\ e^{-1/x^2}, & x \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

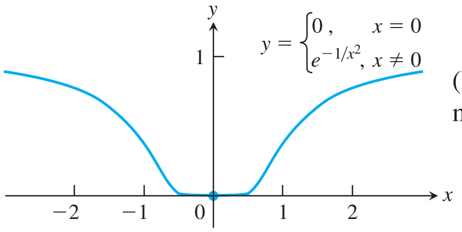


FIGURE 10.19 The graph of the continuous extension of $y = e^{-1/x^2}$ is so flat at the origin that all of its derivatives there are zero (Example 4). Therefore its Taylor series, which is zero everywhere, is not the function itself.

(Figure 10.19) has derivatives of all orders at $x = 0$ and that $f^{(n)}(0) = 0$ for all n. This means that the Taylor series generated by f at $x = 0$ is

$$\begin{aligned} f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}x^n + \cdots \\ = 0 + 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2 + \cdots + 0 \cdot x^n + \cdots \\ = 0 + 0 + \cdots + 0 + \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

The series converges for every x (its sum is 0) but converges to $f(x)$ only at $x = 0$. That is, the Taylor series generated by $f(x)$ in this example is *not* equal to the function $f(x)$ over the entire interval of convergence. ■

Two questions still remain.

1. For what values of x can we normally expect a Taylor series to converge to its generating function?
2. How accurately do a function's Taylor polynomials approximate the function on a given interval?

The answers are provided by a theorem of Taylor in the next section.

Exercises 10.8

Finding Taylor Polynomials

In Exercises 1–10, find the Taylor polynomials of orders 0, 1, 2, and 3 generated by f at a.

1. $f(x) = e^{2x}, \quad a = 0$

2. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad a = 0$

3. $f(x) = \ln x, \quad a = 1$

4. $f(x) = \ln(1 + x), \quad a = 0$

5. $f(x) = 1/x, \quad a = 2$

6. $f(x) = 1/(x + 2), \quad a = 0$

7. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad a = \pi/4$

8. $f(x) = \tan x, \quad a = \pi/4$

9. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad a = 4$

10. $f(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}, \quad a = 0$

Finding Taylor Series at $x = 0$ (Maclaurin Series)

Find the Maclaurin series for the functions in Exercises 11–22.

11. e^{-x}

12. xe^x

13. $\dfrac{1}{1 + x}$

14. $\dfrac{2 + x}{1 - x}$

15. $\sin 3x$

16. $\sin \dfrac{x}{2}$

17. $7 \cos(-x)$

18. $5 \cos \pi x$

19. $\cosh x = \dfrac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}$

20. $\sinh x = \dfrac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}$

21. $x^4 - 2x^3 - 5x + 4$

22. $\dfrac{x^2}{x + 1}$

Finding Taylor and Maclaurin Series

In Exercises 23–32, find the Taylor series generated by f at $x = a$.

23. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x + 4, \quad a = 2$

24. $f(x) = 2x^3 + x^2 + 3x - 8, \quad a = 1$

25. $f(x) = x^4 + x^2 + 1, \quad a = -2$

26. $f(x) = 3x^5 - x^4 + 2x^3 + x^2 - 2, \quad a = -1$

27. $f(x) = 1/x^2, \quad a = 1$

28. $f(x) = 1/(1 - x)^3, \quad a = 0$

29. $f(x) = e^x, \quad a = 2$

30. $f(x) = 2^x, \quad a = 1$

31. $f(x) = \cos(2x + (\pi/2)), \quad a = \pi/4$

32. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 1}, \quad a = 0$

In Exercises 33–36, find the first three nonzero terms of the Maclaurin series for each function and the values of x for which the series converges absolutely.

33. $f(x) = \cos x - (2/(1 - x))$

34. $f(x) = (1 - x + x^2)e^x$

35. $f(x) = (\sin x) \ln(1 + x)$

36. $f(x) = x \sin^2 x$

Theory and Examples

37. Use the Taylor series generated by e^x at $x = a$ to show that

$$e^x = e^a\left[1 + (x - a) + \frac{(x - a)^2}{2!} + \cdots\right].$$

38. (*Continuation of Exercise 37.*) Find the Taylor series generated by e^x at $x = 1$. Compare your answer with the formula in Exercise 37.

39. Let $f(x)$ have derivatives through order n at $x = a$. Show that the Taylor polynomial of order n and its first n derivatives have the same values that f and its first n derivatives have at $x = a$.

40. Approximation properties of Taylor polynomials Suppose that $f(x)$ is differentiable on an interval centered at $x = a$ and that $g(x) = b_0 + b_1(x - a) + \cdots + b_n(x - a)^n$ is a polynomial of degree n with constant coefficients $b_0, \ldots, b_n$. Let $E(x) = f(x) - g(x)$. Show that if we impose on g the conditions

i) $E(a) = 0$ — The approximation error is zero at $x = a$.

ii) $\lim_{x\to a} \dfrac{E(x)}{(x - a)^n} = 0,$ — The error is negligible when compared to $(x - a)^n$.

then

$$g(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n.$$

Thus, the Taylor polynomial $P_n(x)$ is the only polynomial of degree less than or equal to n whose error is both zero at $x = a$ and negligible when compared with $(x - a)^n$.

Quadratic Approximations The Taylor polynomial of order 2 generated by a twice-differentiable function $f(x)$ at $x = a$ is called the *quadratic approximation* of f at $x = a$. In Exercises 41–46, find the **(a)** linearization (Taylor polynomial of order 1) and **(b)** quadratic approximation of f at $x = 0$.

41. $f(x) = \ln(\cos x)$

42. $f(x) = e^{\sin x}$

43. $f(x) = 1/\sqrt{1 - x^2}$

44. $f(x) = \cosh x$

45. $f(x) = \sin x$

46. $f(x) = \tan x$

10.9 Convergence of Taylor Series

In the last section we asked when a Taylor series for a function can be expected to converge to that (generating) function. We answer the question in this section with the following theorem.

THEOREM 23—Taylor's Theorem If f and its first n derivatives $f', f'', \ldots, f^{(n)}$ are continuous on the closed interval between a and b, and $f^{(n)}$ is differentiable on the open interval between a and b, then there exists a number c between a and b such that

$$f(b) = f(a) + f'(a)(b - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(b - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(b - a)^n + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n + 1)!}(b - a)^{n+1}.$$

Taylor's Theorem is a generalization of the Mean Value Theorem (Exercise 45). There is a proof of Taylor's Theorem at the end of this section.

When we apply Taylor's Theorem, we usually want to hold a fixed and treat b as an independent variable. Taylor's formula is easier to use in circumstances like these if we change b to x. Here is a version of the theorem with this change.

Taylor's Formula

If f has derivatives of all orders in an open interval I containing a, then for each positive integer n and for each x in I,

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n + R_n(x), \tag{1}$$

where

$$R_n(x) = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n + 1)!}(x - a)^{n+1} \quad \text{for some } c \text{ between } a \text{ and } x. \tag{2}$$

When we state Taylor's theorem this way, it says that for each $x \in I$,

$$f(x) = P_n(x) + R_n(x).$$

The function $R_n(x)$ is determined by the value of the $(n+1)$st derivative $f^{(n+1)}$ at a point c that depends on both a and x, and that lies somewhere between them. For any value of n we want, the equation gives both a polynomial approximation of f of that order and a formula for the error involved in using that approximation over the interval I.

Equation (1) is called **Taylor's formula**. The function $R_n(x)$ is called the **remainder of order n** or the **error term** for the approximation of f by $P_n(x)$ over I.

> If $R_n(x) \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$ for all $x \in I$, we say that the Taylor series generated by f at $x = a$ **converges** to f on I, and we write
>
> $$f(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(k)}(a)}{k!}(x-a)^k.$$

Often we can estimate R_n without knowing the value of c, as the following example illustrates.

EXAMPLE 1 Show that the Taylor series generated by $f(x) = e^x$ at $x = 0$ converges to $f(x)$ for every real value of x.

Solution The function has derivatives of all orders throughout the interval $I = (-\infty, \infty)$. Equations (1) and (2) with $f(x) = e^x$ and $a = 0$ give

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + R_n(x)$$

Polynomial from Section 10.8, Example 2

and

$$R_n(x) = \frac{e^c}{(n+1)!}x^{n+1} \qquad \text{for some } c \text{ between 0 and } x.$$

Since e^x is an increasing function of x, e^c lies between $e^0 = 1$ and e^x. When x is negative, so is c, and $e^c < 1$. When x is zero, $e^x = 1$ so that $R_n(x) = 0$. When x is positive, so is c, and $e^c < e^x$. Thus, for $R_n(x)$ given as above,

$$|R_n(x)| \le \frac{|x|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \qquad \text{when } x \le 0, \qquad e^c < 1$$

and

$$|R_n(x)| < e^x \frac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} \qquad \text{when } x > 0. \qquad e^c < e^x$$

Finally, because

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)!} = 0 \qquad \text{for every } x,$$

Section 10.1, Theorem 5

$\lim_{n\to\infty} R_n(x) = 0$, and the series converges to e^x for every x. Thus,

$$e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{x^k}{k!} + \cdots. \tag{3}$$

■

The Number e as a Series

$$e = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!}$$

We can use the result of Example 1 with $x = 1$ to write

$$e = 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n!} + R_n(1),$$

where for some c between 0 and 1,

$$R_n(1) = e^c \frac{1}{(n+1)!} < \frac{3}{(n+1)!}. \qquad e^c < e^1 < 3$$

Estimating the Remainder

It is often possible to estimate $R_n(x)$ as we did in Example 1. This method of estimation is so convenient that we state it as a theorem for future reference.

THEOREM 24—The Remainder Estimation Theorem If there is a positive constant M such that $|f^{(n+1)}(t)| \leq M$ for all t between x and a, inclusive, then the remainder term $R_n(x)$ in Taylor's Theorem satisfies the inequality

$$|R_n(x)| \leq M \frac{|x-a|^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}.$$

If this inequality holds for every n and the other conditions of Taylor's Theorem are satisfied by f, then the series converges to $f(x)$.

The next two examples use Theorem 24 to show that the Taylor series generated by the sine and cosine functions do in fact converge to the functions themselves.

EXAMPLE 2 Show that the Taylor series for $\sin x$ at $x = 0$ converges for all x.

Solution The function and its derivatives are

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sin x, & f'(x) &= \cos x, \\ f''(x) &= -\sin x, & f'''(x) &= -\cos x, \\ &\vdots & &\vdots \\ f^{(2k)}(x) &= (-1)^k \sin x, & f^{(2k+1)}(x) &= (-1)^k \cos x, \end{aligned}$$

so

$$f^{(2k)}(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad f^{(2k+1)}(0) = (-1)^k.$$

The series has only odd-powered terms and, for $n = 2k + 1$, Taylor's Theorem gives

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \cdots + \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} + R_{2k+1}(x).$$

All the derivatives of $\sin x$ have absolute values less than or equal to 1, so we can apply the Remainder Estimation Theorem with $M = 1$ to obtain

$$|R_{2k+1}(x)| \leq 1 \cdot \frac{|x|^{2k+2}}{(2k+2)!}.$$

From Theorem 5, Rule 6, we have $\left(|x|^{2k+2}/(2k+2)!\right) \to 0$ as $k \to \infty$, whatever the value of x, so $R_{2k+1}(x) \to 0$ and the Maclaurin series for $\sin x$ converges to $\sin x$ for every x. Thus,

$$\sin x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots. \tag{4}$$

■

EXAMPLE 3 Show that the Taylor series for $\cos x$ at $x = 0$ converges to $\cos x$ for every value of x.

Solution We add the remainder term to the Taylor polynomial for $\cos x$ (Section 10.8, Example 3) to obtain Taylor's formula for $\cos x$ with $n = 2k$:

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \cdots + (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!} + R_{2k}(x).$$

Because the derivatives of the cosine have absolute value less than or equal to 1, the Remainder Estimation Theorem with $M = 1$ gives

$$|R_{2k}(x)| \le 1 \cdot \frac{|x|^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}.$$

For every value of x, $R_{2k}(x) \to 0$ as $k \to \infty$. Therefore, the series converges to $\cos x$ for every value of x. Thus,

$$\cos x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k}}{(2k)!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots. \tag{5}$$

Using Taylor Series

Since every Taylor series is a power series, the operations of adding, subtracting, and multiplying Taylor series are all valid on the intersection of their intervals of convergence.

EXAMPLE 4 Using known series, find the first few terms of the Taylor series for the given function using power series operations.

(a) $\frac{1}{3}(2x + x\cos x)$ **(b)** $e^x \cos x$

Solution

(a)

$$\frac{1}{3}(2x + x\cos x) = \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}x\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \cdots + (-1)^k \frac{x^{2k}}{(2k)!} + \cdots\right)$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{1}{3}x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{3 \cdot 4!} - \cdots = x - \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^5}{72} - \cdots$$

(b)

$$e^x \cos x = \left(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots\right) \cdot \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \cdots\right)$$

Multiply the first series by each term of the second series.

$$= \left(1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \cdots\right) - \left(\frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{2!2!} + \frac{x^5}{2!3!} + \cdots\right)$$

$$+ \left(\frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^5}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{2!4!} + \cdots\right) + \cdots$$

$$= 1 + x - \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{6} + \cdots$$

By Theorem 20, we can use the Taylor series of the function f to find the Taylor series of $f(u(x))$ where $u(x)$ is any continuous function. The Taylor series resulting from this substitution will converge for all x such that $u(x)$ lies within the interval of convergence of the Taylor series of f. For instance, we can find the Taylor series for cos $2x$ by substituting $2x$ for x in the Taylor series for cos x:

$$\cos 2x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k (2x)^{2k}}{(2k)!} = 1 - \frac{(2x)^2}{2!} + \frac{(2x)^4}{4!} - \frac{(2x)^6}{6!} + \cdots$$

Eq. (5) with $2x$ for x

$$= 1 - \frac{2^2x^2}{2!} + \frac{2^4x^4}{4!} - \frac{2^6x^6}{6!} + \cdots$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{2^{2k}x^{2k}}{(2k)!}.$$

EXAMPLE 5 For what values of x can we replace sin x by $x - (x^3/3!)$ with an error of magnitude no greater than 3×10^{-4}?

Solution Here we can take advantage of the fact that the Taylor series for sin x is an alternating series for every nonzero value of x. According to the Alternating Series Estimation Theorem (Section 10.6), the error in truncating

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \cdots$$

after $(x^3/3!)$ is no greater than

$$\left|\frac{x^5}{5!}\right| = \frac{|x|^5}{120}.$$

Therefore the error will be less than or equal to 3×10^{-4} if

$$\frac{|x|^5}{120} < 3 \times 10^{-4} \qquad \text{or} \qquad |x| < \sqrt[5]{360 \times 10^{-4}} \approx 0.514.$$

Rounded down, to be safe

The Alternating Series Estimation Theorem tells us something that the Remainder Estimation Theorem does not: namely, that the estimate $x - (x^3/3!)$ for sin x is an underestimate when x is positive, because then $x^5/120$ is positive.

Figure 10.20 shows the graph of sin x, along with the graphs of a number of its approximating Taylor polynomials. The graph of $P_3(x) = x - (x^3/3!)$ is almost indistinguishable from the sine curve when $0 \le x \le 1$. ■

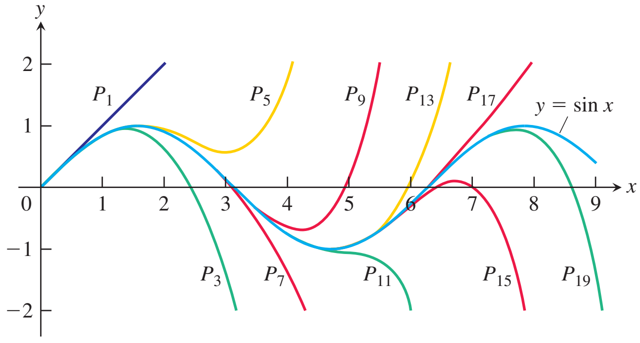


FIGURE 10.20 The polynomials

$$P_{2n+1}(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{(-1)^k x^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}$$

converge to sin x as $n \to \infty$. Notice how closely $P_3(x)$ approximates the sine curve for $x \le 1$ (Example 5).

A Proof of Taylor's Theorem

We prove Taylor's theorem assuming $a < b$. The proof for $a > b$ is nearly the same.

The Taylor polynomial

$$P_n(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n$$

and its first n derivatives match the function f and its first n derivatives at $x = a$. We do not disturb that matching if we add another term of the form $K(x - a)^{n+1}$, where K is any constant, because such a term and its first n derivatives are all equal to zero at $x = a$. The new function

$$\phi_n(x) = P_n(x) + K(x - a)^{n+1}$$

and its first n derivatives still agree with f and its first n derivatives at $x = a$.

We now choose the particular value of K that makes the curve $y = \phi_n(x)$ agree with the original curve $y = f(x)$ at $x = b$. In symbols,

$$f(b) = P_n(b) + K(b - a)^{n+1}, \qquad \text{or} \qquad K = \frac{f(b) - P_n(b)}{(b - a)^{n+1}}. \tag{6}$$

With K defined by Equation (6), the function

$$F(x) = f(x) - \phi_n(x)$$

measures the difference between the original function f and the approximating function ϕ_n for each x in $[a, b]$.

We now use Rolle's Theorem (Section 4.2). First, because $F(a) = F(b) = 0$ and both F and F' are continuous on $[a, b]$, we know that

$$F'(c_1) = 0 \qquad \text{for some } c_1 \text{ in } (a, b).$$

Next, because $F'(a) = F'(c_1) = 0$ and both F' and F'' are continuous on $[a, c_1]$, we know that

$$F''(c_2) = 0 \qquad \text{for some } c_2 \text{ in } (a, c_1).$$

Rolle's Theorem, applied successively to $F'', F''', \ldots, F^{(n-1)}$, implies the existence of

$$\begin{array}{lll} c_3 & \text{in } (a, c_2) & \text{such that } F'''(c_3) = 0, \\ c_4 & \text{in } (a, c_3) & \text{such that } F^{(4)}(c_4) = 0, \\ & \vdots & \\ c_n & \text{in } (a, c_{n-1}) & \text{such that } F^{(n)}(c_n) = 0. \end{array}$$

Finally, because $F^{(n)}$ is continuous on $[a, c_n]$ and differentiable on (a, c_n), and $F^{(n)}(a) = F^{(n)}(c_n) = 0$, Rolle's Theorem implies that there is a number c_{n+1} in (a, c_n) such that

$$F^{(n+1)}(c_{n+1}) = 0. \tag{7}$$

If we differentiate $F(x) = f(x) - P_n(x) - K(x - a)^{n+1}$ a total of $n + 1$ times, we get

$$F^{(n+1)}(x) = f^{(n+1)}(x) - 0 - (n + 1)!K. \tag{8}$$

Equations (7) and (8) together give

$$K = \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n + 1)!} \qquad \text{for some number } c = c_{n+1} \text{ in } (a, b). \tag{9}$$

Equations (6) and (9) give

$$f(b) = P_n(b) + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(c)}{(n+1)!}(b-a)^{n+1}.$$

This concludes the proof. ■

Exercises 10.9

Finding Taylor Series

Use substitution (as in Example 4) to find the Taylor series at $x = 0$ of the functions in Exercises 1–10.

1. e^{-5x} **2.** $e^{-x/2}$ **3.** $5 \sin(-x)$

4. $\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{2}\right)$ **5.** $\cos 5x^2$ **6.** $\cos\left(x^{2/3}/\sqrt{2}\right)$

7. $\ln(1+x^2)$ **8.** $\tan^{-1}(3x^4)$ **9.** $\frac{1}{1+\frac{3}{4}x^3}$

10. $\frac{1}{2-x}$

Use power series operations to find the Taylor series at $x = 0$ for the functions in Exercises 11–28.

11. xe^x **12.** $x^2 \sin x$ **13.** $\frac{x^2}{2} - 1 + \cos x$

14. $\sin x - x + \frac{x^3}{3!}$ **15.** $x \cos \pi x$ **16.** $x^2 \cos(x^2)$

17. $\cos^2 x$ (*Hint:* $\cos^2 x = (1 + \cos 2x)/2$.)

18. $\sin^2 x$ **19.** $\frac{x^2}{1-2x}$ **20.** $x \ln(1+2x)$

21. $\frac{1}{(1-x)^2}$ **22.** $\frac{2}{(1-x)^3}$ **23.** $x \tan^{-1} x^2$

24. $\sin x \cdot \cos x$ **25.** $e^x + \frac{1}{1+x}$ **26.** $\cos x - \sin x$

27. $\frac{x}{3}\ln(1+x^2)$ **28.** $\ln(1+x) - \ln(1-x)$

Find the first four nonzero terms in the Maclaurin series for the functions in Exercises 29–34.

29. $e^x \sin x$ **30.** $\frac{\ln(1+x)}{1-x}$ **31.** $(\tan^{-1} x)^2$

32. $\cos^2 x \cdot \sin x$ **33.** $e^{\sin x}$ **34.** $\sin(\tan^{-1} x)$

Error Estimates

35. Estimate the error if $P_3(x) = x - (x^3/6)$ is used to estimate the value of $\sin x$ at $x = 0.1$.

36. Estimate the error if $P_4(x) = 1 + x + (x^2/2) + (x^3/6) + (x^4/24)$ is used to estimate the value of e^x at $x = 1/2$.

37. For approximately what values of x can you replace $\sin x$ by $x - (x^3/6)$ with an error of magnitude no greater than 5×10^{-4}? Give reasons for your answer.

38. If $\cos x$ is replaced by $1 - (x^2/2)$ and $|x| < 0.5$, what estimate can be made of the error? Does $1 - (x^2/2)$ tend to be too large, or too small? Give reasons for your answer.

39. How close is the approximation $\sin x = x$ when $|x| < 10^{-3}$? For which of these values of x is $x < \sin x$?

40. The estimate $\sqrt{1+x} = 1 + (x/2)$ is used when x is small. Estimate the error when $|x| < 0.01$.

41. The approximation $e^x = 1 + x + (x^2/2)$ is used when x is small. Use the Remainder Estimation Theorem to estimate the error when $|x| < 0.1$.

42. (*Continuation of Exercise 41.*) When $x < 0$, the series for e^x is an alternating series. Use the Alternating Series Estimation Theorem to estimate the error that results from replacing e^x by $1 + x + (x^2/2)$ when $-0.1 < x < 0$. Compare your estimate with the one you obtained in Exercise 41.

Theory and Examples

43. Use the identity $\sin^2 x = (1 - \cos 2x)/2$ to obtain the Maclaurin series for $\sin^2 x$. Then differentiate this series to obtain the Maclaurin series for $2 \sin x \cos x$. Check that this is the series for $\sin 2x$.

44. (*Continuation of Exercise 43.*) Use the identity $\cos^2 x = \cos 2x + \sin^2 x$ to obtain a power series for $\cos^2 x$.

45. Taylor's Theorem and the Mean Value Theorem Explain how the Mean Value Theorem (Section 4.2, Theorem 4) is a special case of Taylor's Theorem.

46. Linearizations at inflection points Show that if the graph of a twice-differentiable function $f(x)$ has an inflection point at $x = a$, then the linearization of f at $x = a$ is also the quadratic approximation of f at $x = a$. This explains why tangent lines fit so well at inflection points.

47. The (second) second derivative test Use the equation

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(c_2)}{2}(x-a)^2$$

to establish the following test.

Let f have continuous first and second derivatives and suppose that $f'(a) = 0$. Then

a. f has a local maximum at a if $f'' \le 0$ throughout an interval whose interior contains a;

b. f has a local minimum at a if $f'' \ge 0$ throughout an interval whose interior contains a.

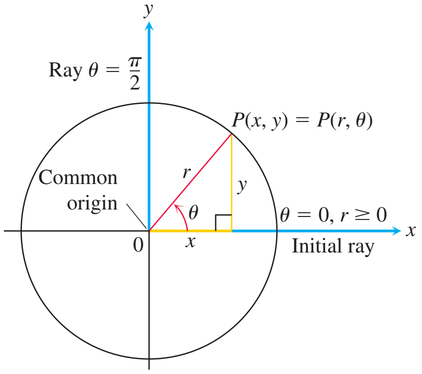


FIGURE 11.25 The usual way to relate polar and Cartesian coordinates.

becomes the positive y-axis (Figure 11.25). The two coordinate systems are then related by the following equations.

> **Equations Relating Polar and Cartesian Coordinates**
>
> $$x = r\cos\theta, \quad y = r\sin\theta, \quad r^2 = x^2 + y^2, \quad \tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$$

The first two of these equations uniquely determine the Cartesian coordinates x and y given the polar coordinates r and θ. On the other hand, if x and y are given, the third equation gives two possible choices for r (a positive and a negative value). For each $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$, there is a unique $\theta \in [0, 2\pi)$ satisfying the first two equations, each then giving a polar coordinate representation of the Cartesian point (x, y). The other polar coordinate representations for the point can be determined from these two, as in Example 1.

EXAMPLE 4 Here are some plane curves expressed in terms of both polar coordinate and Cartesian coordinate equations.

Polar equation	Cartesian equivalent
$r\cos\theta = 2$	$x = 2$
$r^2\cos\theta\sin\theta = 4$	$xy = 4$
$r^2\cos^2\theta - r^2\sin^2\theta = 1$	$x^2 - y^2 = 1$
$r = 1 + 2r\cos\theta$	$y^2 - 3x^2 - 4x - 1 = 0$
$r = 1 - \cos\theta$	$x^4 + y^4 + 2x^2y^2 + 2x^3 + 2xy^2 - y^2 = 0$

Some curves are more simply expressed with polar coordinates; others are not. ■

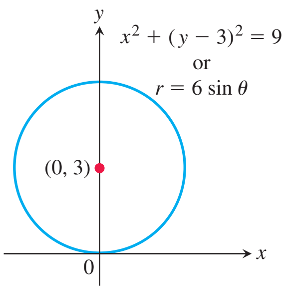


FIGURE 11.26 The circle in Example 5.

EXAMPLE 5 Find a polar equation for the circle $x^2 + (y - 3)^2 = 9$ (Figure 11.26).

Solution We apply the equations relating polar and Cartesian coordinates:

$$\begin{aligned}
x^2 + (y-3)^2 &= 9 \\
x^2 + y^2 - 6y + 9 &= 9 && \text{Expand } (y-3)^2. \\
x^2 + y^2 - 6y &= 0 && \text{Cancelation} \\
r^2 - 6r\sin\theta &= 0 && x^2 + y^2 = r^2,\ y = r\sin\theta \\
r = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad r - 6\sin\theta &= 0 \\
r &= 6\sin\theta && \text{Includes both possibilities}
\end{aligned}$$
■

EXAMPLE 6 Replace the following polar equations by equivalent Cartesian equations and identify their graphs.

(a) $r\cos\theta = -4$

(b) $r^2 = 4r\cos\theta$

(c) $r = \dfrac{4}{2\cos\theta - \sin\theta}$

Solution We use the substitutions $r\cos\theta = x$, $r\sin\theta = y$, and $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$.

(a) $r\cos\theta = -4$

The Cartesian equation: $\quad r\cos\theta = -4$

$$x = -4 \qquad \text{Substitution}$$

The graph: Vertical line through $x = -4$ on the x-axis

(b) $r^2 = 4r\cos\theta$

The Cartesian equation:

$$\begin{aligned} r^2 &= 4r\cos\theta \\ x^2 + y^2 &= 4x && \text{Substitution} \\ x^2 - 4x + y^2 &= 0 \\ x^2 - 4x + 4 + y^2 &= 4 && \text{Completing the square} \\ (x-2)^2 + y^2 &= 4 && \text{Factoring} \end{aligned}$$

The graph: Circle, radius 2, center $(h, k) = (2, 0)$

(c) $r = \dfrac{4}{2\cos\theta - \sin\theta}$

The Cartesian equation:

$$\begin{aligned} r(2\cos\theta - \sin\theta) &= 4 \\ 2r\cos\theta - r\sin\theta &= 4 && \text{Multiplying by } r \\ 2x - y &= 4 && \text{Substitution} \\ y &= 2x - 4 && \text{Solve for } y. \end{aligned}$$

The graph: Line, slope $m = 2$, y-intercept $b = -4$ ■

Exercises 11.3

Polar Coordinates

1. Which polar coordinate pairs label the same point?
   - **a.** $(3, 0)$ **b.** $(-3, 0)$ **c.** $(2, 2\pi/3)$
   - **d.** $(2, 7\pi/3)$ **e.** $(-3, \pi)$ **f.** $(2, \pi/3)$
   - **g.** $(-3, 2\pi)$ **h.** $(-2, -\pi/3)$
2. Which polar coordinate pairs label the same point?
   - **a.** $(-2, \pi/3)$ **b.** $(2, -\pi/3)$ **c.** (r, θ)
   - **d.** $(r, \theta + \pi)$ **e.** $(-r, \theta)$ **f.** $(2, -2\pi/3)$
   - **g.** $(-r, \theta + \pi)$ **h.** $(-2, 2\pi/3)$
3. Plot the following points (given in polar coordinates). Then find all the polar coordinates of each point.
   - **a.** $(2, \pi/2)$ **b.** $(2, 0)$
   - **c.** $(-2, \pi/2)$ **d.** $(-2, 0)$
4. Plot the following points (given in polar coordinates). Then find all the polar coordinates of each point.
   - **a.** $(3, \pi/4)$ **b.** $(-3, \pi/4)$
   - **c.** $(3, -\pi/4)$ **d.** $(-3, -\pi/4)$

Polar to Cartesian Coordinates

5. Find the Cartesian coordinates of the points in Exercise 1.
6. Find the Cartesian coordinates of the following points (given in polar coordinates).
   - **a.** $\left(\sqrt{2}, \pi/4\right)$ **b.** $(1, 0)$
   - **c.** $(0, \pi/2)$ **d.** $\left(-\sqrt{2}, \pi/4\right)$
   - **e.** $(-3, 5\pi/6)$ **f.** $(5, \tan^{-1}(4/3))$
   - **g.** $(-1, 7\pi)$ **h.** $\left(2\sqrt{3}, 2\pi/3\right)$

Cartesian to Polar Coordinates

7. Find the polar coordinates, $0 \le \theta < 2\pi$ and $r \ge 0$, of the following points given in Cartesian coordinates.
   - **a.** $(1, 1)$ **b.** $(-3, 0)$
   - **c.** $\left(\sqrt{3}, -1\right)$ **d.** $(-3, 4)$
8. Find the polar coordinates, $-\pi \le \theta < \pi$ and $r \ge 0$, of the following points given in Cartesian coordinates.
   - **a.** $(-2, -2)$ **b.** $(0, 3)$
   - **c.** $\left(-\sqrt{3}, 1\right)$ **d.** $(5, -12)$
9. Find the polar coordinates, $0 \le \theta < 2\pi$ and $r \le 0$, of the following points given in Cartesian coordinates.
   - **a.** $(3, 3)$ **b.** $(-1, 0)$
   - **c.** $\left(-1, \sqrt{3}\right)$ **d.** $(4, -3)$
10. Find the polar coordinates, $-\pi \le \theta < 2\pi$ and $r \le 0$, of the following points given in Cartesian coordinates.
    - **a.** $(-2, 0)$ **b.** $(1, 0)$
    - **c.** $(0, -3)$ **d.** $\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \dfrac{1}{2}\right)$

Graphing Sets of Polar Coordinate Points

Graph the sets of points whose polar coordinates satisfy the equations and inequalities in Exercises 11–26.

11. $r = 2$
12. $0 \le r \le 2$
13. $r \ge 1$
14. $1 \le r \le 2$

15. $0 \le \theta \le \pi/6, \quad r \ge 0$

16. $\theta = 2\pi/3, \quad r \le -2$

17. $\theta = \pi/3, \quad -1 \le r \le 3$

18. $\theta = 11\pi/4, \quad r \ge -1$

19. $\theta = \pi/2, \quad r \ge 0$

20. $\theta = \pi/2, \quad r \le 0$

21. $0 \le \theta \le \pi, \quad r = 1$

22. $0 \le \theta \le \pi, \quad r = -1$

23. $\pi/4 \le \theta \le 3\pi/4, \quad 0 \le r \le 1$

24. $-\pi/4 \le \theta \le \pi/4, \quad -1 \le r \le 1$

25. $-\pi/2 \le \theta \le \pi/2, \quad 1 \le r \le 2$

26. $0 \le \theta \le \pi/2, \quad 1 \le |r| \le 2$

Polar to Cartesian Equations

Replace the polar equations in Exercises 27–52 with equivalent Cartesian equations. Then describe or identify the graph.

27. $r \cos \theta = 2$

28. $r \sin \theta = -1$

29. $r \sin \theta = 0$

30. $r \cos \theta = 0$

31. $r = 4 \csc \theta$

32. $r = -3 \sec \theta$

33. $r \cos \theta + r \sin \theta = 1$

34. $r \sin \theta = r \cos \theta$

35. $r^2 = 1$

36. $r^2 = 4r \sin \theta$

37. $r = \dfrac{5}{\sin \theta - 2 \cos \theta}$

38. $r^2 \sin 2\theta = 2$

39. $r = \cot \theta \csc \theta$

40. $r = 4 \tan \theta \sec \theta$

41. $r = \csc \theta \, e^{r \cos \theta}$

42. $r \sin \theta = \ln r + \ln \cos \theta$

43. $r^2 + 2r^2 \cos \theta \sin \theta = 1$

44. $\cos^2 \theta = \sin^2 \theta$

45. $r^2 = -4r \cos \theta$

46. $r^2 = -6r \sin \theta$

47. $r = 8 \sin \theta$

48. $r = 3 \cos \theta$

49. $r = 2 \cos \theta + 2 \sin \theta$

50. $r = 2 \cos \theta - \sin \theta$

51. $r \sin \left(\theta + \dfrac{\pi}{6} \right) = 2$

52. $r \sin \left(\dfrac{2\pi}{3} - \theta \right) = 5$

Cartesian to Polar Equations

Replace the Cartesian equations in Exercises 53–66 with equivalent polar equations.

53. $x = 7$

54. $y = 1$

55. $x = y$

56. $x - y = 3$

57. $x^2 + y^2 = 4$

58. $x^2 - y^2 = 1$

59. $\dfrac{x^2}{9} + \dfrac{y^2}{4} = 1$

60. $xy = 2$

61. $y^2 = 4x$

62. $x^2 + xy + y^2 = 1$

63. $x^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 4$

64. $(x - 5)^2 + y^2 = 25$

65. $(x - 3)^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 4$

66. $(x + 2)^2 + (y - 5)^2 = 16$

67. Find all polar coordinates of the origin.

68. Vertical and horizontal lines

a. Show that every vertical line in the xy-plane has a polar equation of the form $r = a \sec \theta$.

b. Find the analogous polar equation for horizontal lines in the xy-plane.

11.4 Graphing Polar Coordinate Equations

It is often helpful to graph an equation expressed in polar coordinates in the Cartesian xy-plane. This section describes some techniques for graphing these equations using symmetries and tangents to the graph.

Symmetry

Figure 11.27 illustrates the standard polar coordinate tests for symmetry. The following summary says how the symmetric points are related.

Symmetry Tests for Polar Graphs in the Cartesian xy-Plane

1. *Symmetry about the x-axis:* If the point (r, θ) lies on the graph, then the point $(r, -\theta)$ or $(-r, \pi - \theta)$ lies on the graph (Figure 11.27a).
2. *Symmetry about the y-axis:* If the point (r, θ) lies on the graph, then the point $(r, \pi - \theta)$ or $(-r, -\theta)$ lies on the graph (Figure 11.27b).
3. *Symmetry about the origin:* If the point (r, θ) lies on the graph, then the point $(-r, \theta)$ or $(r, \theta + \pi)$ lies on the graph (Figure 11.27c).

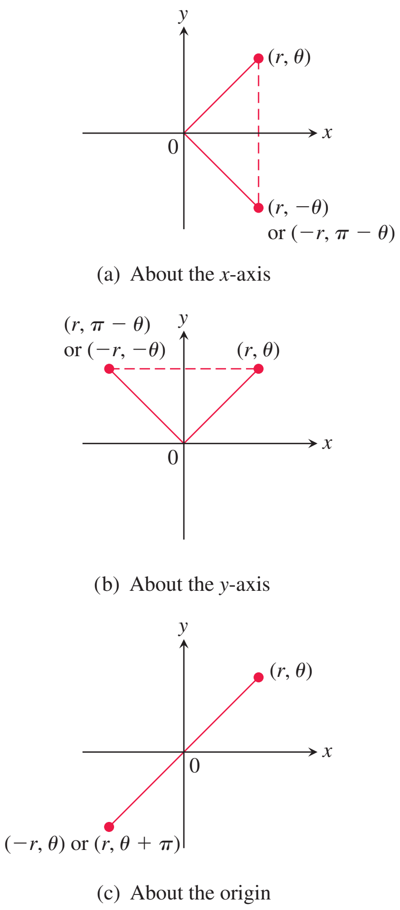


FIGURE 11.27 Three tests for symmetry in polar coordinates.

Slope

The slope of a polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ in the xy-plane is still given by dy/dx, which is not $r' = df/d\theta$. To see why, think of the graph of f as the graph of the parametric equations

$$x = r\cos\theta = f(\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta = f(\theta)\sin\theta.$$

If f is a differentiable function of θ, then so are x and y and, when $dx/d\theta \neq 0$, we can calculate dy/dx from the parametric formula

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy/d\theta}{dx/d\theta} && \text{Section 11.2, Eq. (1) with } t = \theta\\ &= \frac{\dfrac{d}{d\theta}(f(\theta)\cdot\sin\theta)}{\dfrac{d}{d\theta}(f(\theta)\cdot\cos\theta)}\\ &= \frac{\dfrac{df}{d\theta}\sin\theta + f(\theta)\cos\theta}{\dfrac{df}{d\theta}\cos\theta - f(\theta)\sin\theta} && \text{Product Rule for derivatives}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore we see that dy/dx is not the same as $df/d\theta$.

Slope of the Curve $r = f(\theta)$ in the Cartesian xy-Plane

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{(r,\theta)} = \frac{f'(\theta)\sin\theta + f(\theta)\cos\theta}{f'(\theta)\cos\theta - f(\theta)\sin\theta}$$

provided $dx/d\theta \neq 0$ at (r, θ).

If the curve $r = f(\theta)$ passes through the origin at $\theta = \theta_0$, then $f(\theta_0) = 0$, and the slope equation gives

$$\left.\frac{dy}{dx}\right|_{(0,\theta_0)} = \frac{f'(\theta_0)\sin\theta_0}{f'(\theta_0)\cos\theta_0} = \tan\theta_0.$$

If the graph of $r = f(\theta)$ passes through the origin at the value $\theta = \theta_0$, the slope of the curve there is $\tan\theta_0$. The reason we say "slope at $(0, \theta_0)$" and not just "slope at the origin" is that a polar curve may pass through the origin (or any point) more than once, with different slopes at different θ-values. This is not the case in our first example, however.

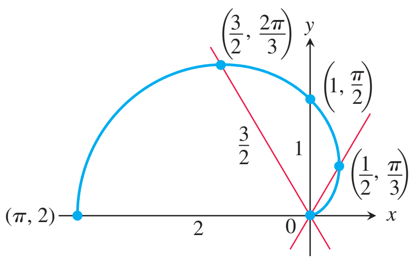
EXAMPLE 1 Graph the curve $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ in the Cartesian xy-plane.

Solution The curve is symmetric about the x-axis because

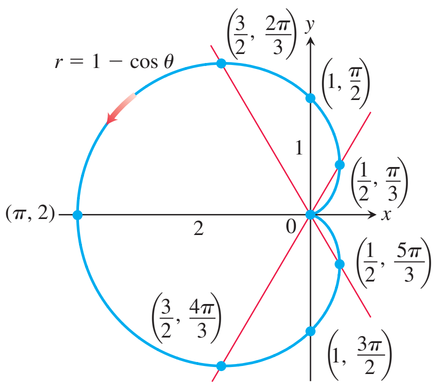
$$\begin{aligned}(r, \theta) \text{ on the graph} &\Rightarrow r = 1 - \cos\theta\\ &\Rightarrow r = 1 - \cos(-\theta) && \cos\theta = \cos(-\theta)\\ &\Rightarrow (r, -\theta) \text{ on the graph.}\end{aligned}$$

θ	$r = 1 - \cos\theta$
0	0
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	1
$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3}{2}$
π	2

(a)



(b)



(c)

FIGURE 11.28 The steps in graphing the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ (Example 1). The arrow shows the direction of increasing θ.

As θ increases from 0 to π, $\cos\theta$ decreases from 1 to -1, and $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ increases from a minimum value of 0 to a maximum value of 2. As θ continues on from π to 2π, $\cos\theta$ increases from -1 back to 1 and r decreases from 2 back to 0. The curve starts to repeat when $\theta = 2\pi$ because the cosine has period 2π.

The curve leaves the origin with slope $\tan(0) = 0$ and returns to the origin with slope $\tan(2\pi) = 0$.

We make a table of values from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$, plot the points, draw a smooth curve through them with a horizontal tangent at the origin, and reflect the curve across the x-axis to complete the graph (Figure 11.28). The curve is called a *cardioid* because of its heart shape. ■

EXAMPLE 2 Graph the curve $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$ in the Cartesian xy-plane.

Solution The equation $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$ requires $\cos\theta \geq 0$, so we get the entire graph by running θ from $-\pi/2$ to $\pi/2$. The curve is symmetric about the x-axis because

$$
\begin{aligned}
(r, \theta) \text{ on the graph} &\Rightarrow r^2 = 4\cos\theta \\
&\Rightarrow r^2 = 4\cos(-\theta) \qquad \cos\theta = \cos(-\theta) \\
&\Rightarrow (r, -\theta) \text{ on the graph.}
\end{aligned}
$$

The curve is also symmetric about the origin because

$$
\begin{aligned}
(r, \theta) \text{ on the graph} &\Rightarrow r^2 = 4\cos\theta \\
&\Rightarrow (-r)^2 = 4\cos\theta \\
&\Rightarrow (-r, \theta) \text{ on the graph.}
\end{aligned}
$$

Together, these two symmetries imply symmetry about the y-axis.

The curve passes through the origin when $\theta = -\pi/2$ and $\theta = \pi/2$. It has a vertical tangent both times because $\tan\theta$ is infinite.

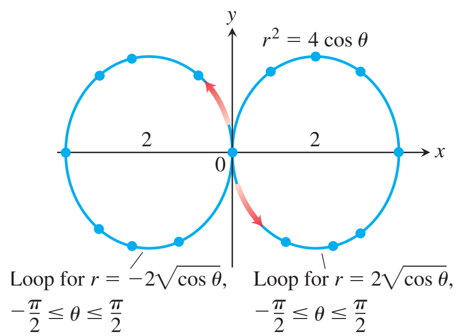
For each value of θ in the interval between $-\pi/2$ and $\pi/2$, the formula $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$ gives two values of r:

$$r = \pm 2\sqrt{\cos\theta}.$$

We make a short table of values, plot the corresponding points, and use information about symmetry and tangents to guide us in connecting the points with a smooth curve (Figure 11.29).

θ	$\cos\theta$	$r = \pm 2\sqrt{\cos\theta}$
0	1	± 2
$\pm\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\approx \pm 1.9$
$\pm\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\approx \pm 1.7$
$\pm\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\approx \pm 1.4$
$\pm\frac{\pi}{2}$	0	0

(a)



(b)

FIGURE 11.29 The graph of $r^2 = 4\cos\theta$. The arrows show the direction of increasing θ. The values of r in the table are rounded (Example 2). ■

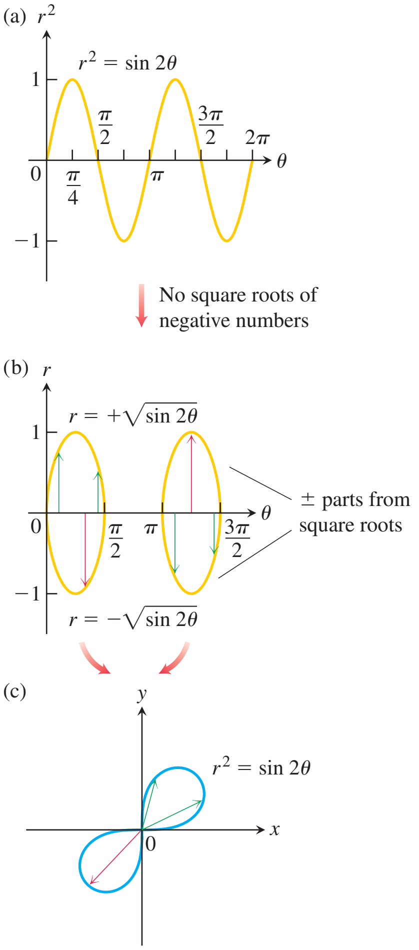


FIGURE 11.30 To plot $r = f(\theta)$ in the Cartesian $r\theta$-plane in (b), we first plot $r^2 = \sin 2\theta$ in the $r^2\theta$-plane in (a) and then ignore the values of θ for which $\sin 2\theta$ is negative. The radii from the sketch in (b) cover the polar graph of the lemniscate in (c) twice (Example 3).

Converting a Graph from the $r\theta$- to xy-Plane

One way to graph a polar equation $r = f(\theta)$ in the xy-plane is to make a table of (r, θ)-values, plot the corresponding points there, and connect them in order of increasing θ. This can work well if enough points have been plotted to reveal all the loops and dimples in the graph. Another method of graphing is to

1. first graph the function $r = f(\theta)$ in the *Cartesian* $r\theta$-plane,
2. then use that Cartesian graph as a "table" and guide to sketch the *polar* coordinate graph in the xy-plane.

This method is sometimes better than simple point plotting because the first Cartesian graph, even when hastily drawn, shows at a glance where r is positive, negative, and nonexistent, as well as where r is increasing and decreasing. Here's an example.

EXAMPLE 3 Graph the *lemniscate* curve $r^2 = \sin 2\theta$ in the Cartesian xy-plane.

Solution Here we begin by plotting r^2 (not r) as a function of θ in the Cartesian $r^2\theta$-plane. See Figure 11.30a. We pass from there to the graph of $r = \pm\sqrt{\sin 2\theta}$ in the $r\theta$-plane (Figure 11.30b), and then draw the polar graph (Figure 11.30c). The graph in Figure 11.30b "covers" the final polar graph in Figure 11.30c twice. We could have managed with either loop alone, with the two upper halves, or with the two lower halves. The double covering does no harm, however, and we actually learn a little more about the behavior of the function this way. ■

USING TECHNOLOGY Graphing Polar Curves Parametrically

For complicated polar curves we may need to use a graphing calculator or computer to graph the curve. If the device does not plot polar graphs directly, we can convert $r = f(\theta)$ into parametric form using the equations

$$x = r\cos\theta = f(\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta = f(\theta)\sin\theta.$$

Then we use the device to draw a parametrized curve in the Cartesian xy-plane. It may be necessary to use the parameter t rather than θ for the graphing device.

Exercises 11.4

Symmetries and Polar Graphs

Identify the symmetries of the curves in Exercises 1–12. Then sketch the curves in the xy-plane.

1. $r = 1 + \cos\theta$
2. $r = 2 - 2\cos\theta$
3. $r = 1 - \sin\theta$
4. $r = 1 + \sin\theta$
5. $r = 2 + \sin\theta$
6. $r = 1 + 2\sin\theta$
7. $r = \sin(\theta/2)$
8. $r = \cos(\theta/2)$
9. $r^2 = \cos\theta$
10. $r^2 = \sin\theta$
11. $r^2 = -\sin\theta$
12. $r^2 = -\cos\theta$

Graph the lemniscates in Exercises 13–16. What symmetries do these curves have?

13. $r^2 = 4\cos 2\theta$
14. $r^2 = 4\sin 2\theta$
15. $r^2 = -\sin 2\theta$
16. $r^2 = -\cos 2\theta$

Slopes of Polar Curves in the xy-Plane

Find the slopes of the curves in Exercises 17–20 at the given points. Sketch the curves along with their tangents at these points.

17. **Cardioid** $r = -1 + \cos\theta$; $\theta = \pm\pi/2$
18. **Cardioid** $r = -1 + \sin\theta$; $\theta = 0, \pi$
19. **Four-leaved rose** $r = \sin 2\theta$; $\theta = \pm\pi/4, \pm 3\pi/4$
20. **Four-leaved rose** $r = \cos 2\theta$; $\theta = 0, \pm\pi/2, \pi$

Graphing Limaçons

Graph the limaçons in Exercises 21–24. Limaçon ("*lee*-ma-sahn") is Old French for "snail." You will understand the name when you graph the limaçons in Exercise 21. Equations for limaçons have the form $r = a \pm b\cos\theta$ or $r = a \pm b\sin\theta$. There are four basic shapes.

21. Limaçons with an inner loop

a. $r = \frac{1}{2} + \cos\theta$ **b.** $r = \frac{1}{2} + \sin\theta$

22. Cardioids

a. $r = 1 - \cos\theta$ **b.** $r = -1 + \sin\theta$

23. Dimpled limaçons

a. $r = \frac{3}{2} + \cos\theta$ **b.** $r = \frac{3}{2} - \sin\theta$

24. Oval limaçons

a. $r = 2 + \cos\theta$ **b.** $r = -2 + \sin\theta$

Graphing Polar Regions and Curves in the *xy*-Plane

25. Sketch the region defined by the inequalities $-1 \le r \le 2$ and $-\pi/2 \le \theta \le \pi/2$.

26. Sketch the region defined by the inequalities $0 \le r \le 2\sec\theta$ and $-\pi/4 \le \theta \le \pi/4$.

In Exercises 27 and 28, sketch the region defined by the inequality.

27. $0 \le r \le 2 - 2\cos\theta$ **28.** $0 \le r^2 \le \cos\theta$

T **29.** Which of the following has the same graph as $r = 1 - \cos\theta$?

a. $r = -1 - \cos\theta$ **b.** $r = 1 + \cos\theta$

Confirm your answer with algebra.

T **30.** Which of the following has the same graph as $r = \cos 2\theta$?

a. $r = -\sin(2\theta + \pi/2)$ **b.** $r = -\cos(\theta/2)$

Confirm your answer with algebra.

T **31. A rose within a rose** Graph the equation $r = 1 - 2\sin 3\theta$.

T **32. The nephroid of Freeth** Graph the nephroid of Freeth:

$$r = 1 + 2\sin\frac{\theta}{2}.$$

T **33. Roses** Graph the roses $r = \cos m\theta$ for $m = 1/3, 2, 3$, and 7.

T **34. Spirals** Polar coordinates are just the thing for defining spirals. Graph the following spirals.

a. $r = \theta$

b. $r = -\theta$

c. *A logarithmic spiral:* $r = e^{\theta/10}$

d. *A hyperbolic spiral:* $r = 8/\theta$

e. *An equilateral hyperbola:* $r = \pm 10/\sqrt{\theta}$

(Use different colors for the two branches.)

T **35.** Graph the equation $r = \sin\left(\frac{8}{7}\theta\right)$ for $0 \le \theta \le 14\pi$.

T **36.** Graph the equation

$$r = \sin^2(2.3\theta) + \cos^4(2.3\theta)$$

for $0 \le \theta \le 10\pi$.

11.5 Areas and Lengths in Polar Coordinates

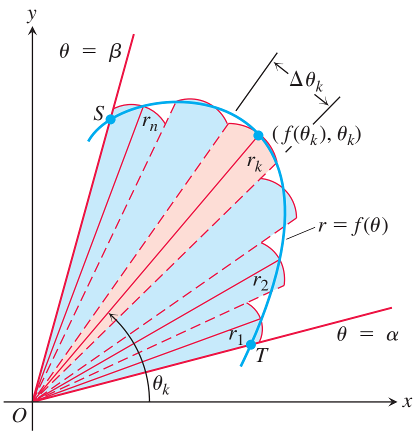


FIGURE 11.31 To derive a formula for the area of region *OTS*, we approximate the region with fan-shaped circular sectors.

This section shows how to calculate areas of plane regions and lengths of curves in polar coordinates. The defining ideas are the same as before, but the formulas are different in polar versus Cartesian coordinates.

Area in the Plane

The region *OTS* in Figure 11.31 is bounded by the rays $\theta = \alpha$ and $\theta = \beta$ and the curve $r = f(\theta)$. We approximate the region with n nonoverlapping fan-shaped circular sectors based on a partition P of angle TOS. The typical sector has radius $r_k = f(\theta_k)$ and central angle of radian measure $\Delta\theta_k$. Its area is $\Delta\theta_k/2\pi$ times the area of a circle of radius r_k, or

$$A_k = \frac{1}{2}r_k{}^2\,\Delta\theta_k = \frac{1}{2}\left(f(\theta_k)\right)^2\Delta\theta_k.$$

The area of region *OTS* is approximately

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k = \sum_{k=1}^{n}\frac{1}{2}\left(f(\theta_k)\right)^2\Delta\theta_k.$$

If f is continuous, we expect the approximations to improve as the norm of the partition P goes to zero, where the norm of P is the largest value of $\Delta\theta_k$. We are then led to the following formula defining the region's area:

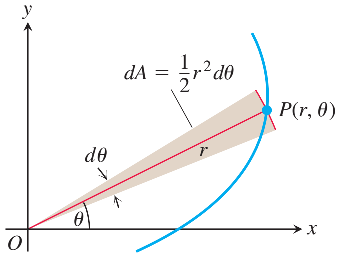


FIGURE 11.32 The area differential dA for the curve $r = f(\theta)$.

$$A = \lim_{\|P\| \to 0} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{2}\left(f(\theta_k)\right)^2 \Delta\theta_k$$

$$= \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{1}{2}\left(f(\theta)\right)^2 d\theta.$$

Area of the Fan-Shaped Region Between the Origin and the Curve $r = f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$

$$A = \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{1}{2} r^2\, d\theta$$

This is the integral of the **area differential** (Figure 11.32)

$$dA = \frac{1}{2} r^2\, d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\left(f(\theta)\right)^2 d\theta.$$

EXAMPLE 1 Find the area of the region in the xy-plane enclosed by the cardioid $r = 2(1 + \cos\theta)$.

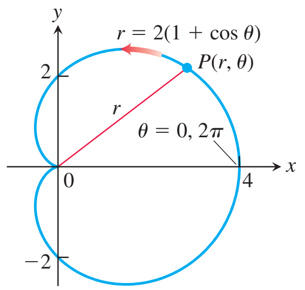


FIGURE 11.33 The cardioid in Example 1.

Solution We graph the cardioid (Figure 11.33) and determine that the radius OP sweeps out the region exactly once as θ runs from 0 to 2π. The area is therefore

$$\int_{\theta=0}^{\theta=2\pi} \frac{1}{2} r^2\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{1}{2}\cdot 4(1+\cos\theta)^2\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} 2(1 + 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta)\, d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \left(2 + 4\cos\theta + 2\cdot\frac{1+\cos 2\theta}{2}\right) d\theta$$

$$= \int_0^{2\pi} (3 + 4\cos\theta + \cos 2\theta)\, d\theta$$

$$= \left[3\theta + 4\sin\theta + \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2}\right]_0^{2\pi} = 6\pi - 0 = 6\pi.$$ ■

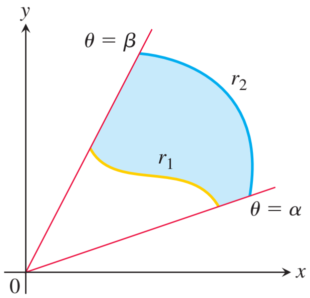


FIGURE 11.34 The area of the shaded region is calculated by subtracting the area of the region between r_1 and the origin from the area of the region between r_2 and the origin.

To find the area of a region like the one in Figure 11.34, which lies between two polar curves $r_1 = r_1(\theta)$ and $r_2 = r_2(\theta)$ from $\theta = \alpha$ to $\theta = \beta$, we subtract the integral of $(1/2)r_1^2\, d\theta$ from the integral of $(1/2)r_2^2\, d\theta$. This leads to the following formula.

Area of the Region $0 \le r_1(\theta) \le r \le r_2(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$

$$A = \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{1}{2} r_2^2\, d\theta - \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{1}{2} r_1^2\, d\theta = \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{1}{2}\left(r_2^2 - r_1^2\right) d\theta \qquad (1)$$

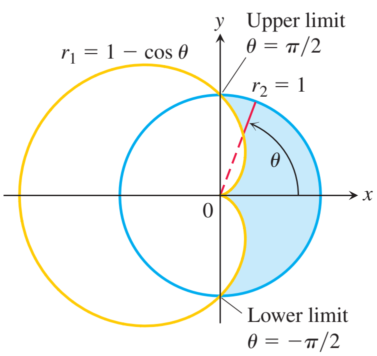


FIGURE 11.35 The region and limits of integration in Example 2.

EXAMPLE 2 Find the area of the region that lies inside the circle $r = 1$ and outside the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

Solution We sketch the region to determine its boundaries and find the limits of integration (Figure 11.35). The outer curve is $r_2 = 1$, the inner curve is $r_1 = 1 - \cos\theta$, and θ runs from $-\pi/2$ to $\pi/2$. The area, from Equation (1), is

$$A = \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}\left(r_2^2 - r_1^2\right) d\theta$$

$$= 2\int_{0}^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}\left(r_2^2 - r_1^2\right) d\theta \qquad \text{Symmetry}$$

$$= \int_{0}^{\pi/2} (1 - (1 - 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta))\, d\theta \qquad \text{Square } r_1.$$

$$= \int_{0}^{\pi/2} (2\cos\theta - \cos^2\theta)\, d\theta = \int_{0}^{\pi/2}\left(2\cos\theta - \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2}\right) d\theta$$

$$= \left[2\sin\theta - \frac{\theta}{2} - \frac{\sin 2\theta}{4}\right]_0^{\pi/2} = 2 - \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

The fact that we can represent a point in different ways in polar coordinates requires extra care in deciding when a point lies on the graph of a polar equation and in determining the points in which polar graphs intersect. (We needed intersection points in Example 2.) In Cartesian coordinates, we can always find the points where two curves cross by solving their equations simultaneously. In polar coordinates, the story is different. Simultaneous solution may reveal some intersection points without revealing others, so it is sometimes difficult to find all points of intersection of two polar curves. One way to identify all the points of intersection is to graph the equations.

Length of a Polar Curve

We can obtain a polar coordinate formula for the length of a curve $r = f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$, by parametrizing the curve as

$$x = r\cos\theta = f(\theta)\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta = f(\theta)\sin\theta, \qquad \alpha \le \theta \le \beta. \qquad (2)$$

The parametric length formula, Equation (3) from Section 11.2, then gives the length as

$$L = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta.$$

This equation becomes

$$L = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta$$

when Equations (2) are substituted for x and y (Exercise 29).

Length of a Polar Curve

If $r = f(\theta)$ has a continuous first derivative for $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$ and if the point $P(r, \theta)$ traces the curve $r = f(\theta)$ exactly once as θ runs from α to β, then the length of the curve is

$$L = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta. \qquad (3)$$

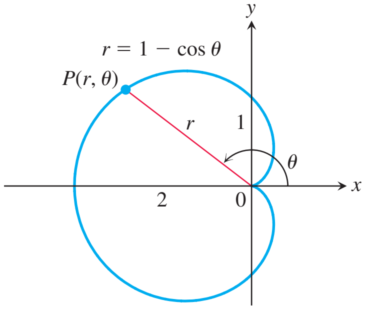


FIGURE 11.36 Calculating the length of a cardioid (Example 3).

EXAMPLE 3 Find the length of the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.

Solution We sketch the cardioid to determine the limits of integration (Figure 11.36). The point $P(r, \theta)$ traces the curve once, counterclockwise as θ runs from 0 to 2π, so these are the values we take for α and β.

With

$$r = 1 - \cos\theta, \qquad \frac{dr}{d\theta} = \sin\theta,$$

we have

$$r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2 = (1 - \cos\theta)^2 + (\sin\theta)^2$$
$$= 1 - 2\cos\theta + \underbrace{\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta}_{1} = 2 - 2\cos\theta$$

and

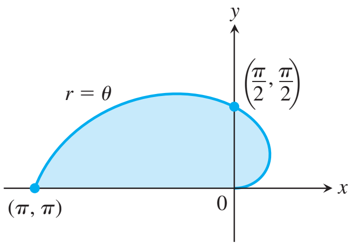
$$L = \int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}\,d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{2 - 2\cos\theta}\,d\theta$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} \sqrt{4\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}}\,d\theta \qquad 1 - \cos\theta = 2\sin^2(\theta/2)$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} 2\left|\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\right|d\theta$$
$$= \int_0^{2\pi} 2\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\,d\theta \qquad \sin(\theta/2) \ge 0 \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$$
$$= \left[-4\cos\frac{\theta}{2}\right]_0^{2\pi} = 4 + 4 = 8.$$

Exercises 11.5

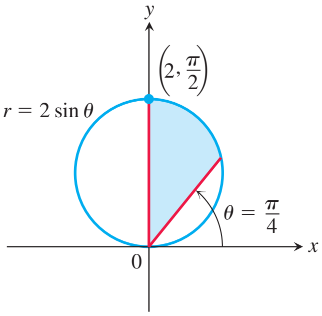
Finding Polar Areas

Find the areas of the regions in Exercises 1–8.

1. Bounded by the spiral $r = \theta$ for $0 \le \theta \le \pi$



2. Bounded by the circle $r = 2\sin\theta$ for $\pi/4 \le \theta \le \pi/2$

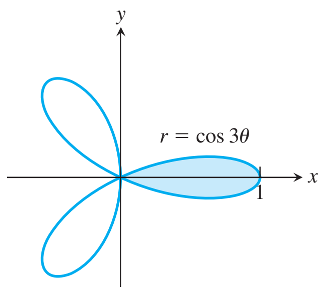


3. Inside the oval limaçon $r = 4 + 2\cos\theta$

4. Inside the cardioid $r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$, $a > 0$

5. Inside one leaf of the four-leaved rose $r = \cos 2\theta$

6. Inside one leaf of the three-leaved rose $r = \cos 3\theta$



7. Inside one loop of the lemniscate $r^2 = 4\sin 2\theta$

8. Inside the six-leaved rose $r^2 = 2\sin 3\theta$

Find the areas of the regions in Exercises 9–18.

9. Shared by the circles $r = 2\cos\theta$ and $r = 2\sin\theta$

10. Shared by the circles $r = 1$ and $r = 2\sin\theta$

11. Shared by the circle $r = 2$ and the cardioid $r = 2(1 - \cos\theta)$

12. Shared by the cardioids $r = 2(1 + \cos\theta)$ and $r = 2(1 - \cos\theta)$

13. Inside the lemniscate $r^2 = 6\cos 2\theta$ and outside the circle $r = \sqrt{3}$

14. Inside the circle $r = 3a\cos\theta$ and outside the cardioid $r = a(1 + \cos\theta)$, $a > 0$

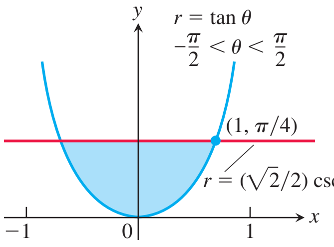
15. Inside the circle $r = -2\cos\theta$ and outside the circle $r = 1$

16. Inside the circle $r = 6$ above the line $r = 3\csc\theta$

17. Inside the circle $r = 4\cos\theta$ and to the right of the vertical line $r = \sec\theta$

18. Inside the circle $r = 4\sin\theta$ and below the horizontal line $r = 3\csc\theta$

19. a. Find the area of the shaded region in the accompanying figure.



b. It looks as if the graph of $r = \tan\theta$, $-\pi/2 < \theta < \pi/2$, could be asymptotic to the lines $x = 1$ and $x = -1$. Is it? Give reasons for your answer.

20. The area of the region that lies inside the cardioid curve $r = \cos\theta + 1$ and outside the circle $r = \cos\theta$ is not

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} \left[(\cos\theta + 1)^2 - \cos^2\theta\right] d\theta = \pi.$$

Why not? What *is* the area? Give reasons for your answers.

Finding Lengths of Polar Curves

Find the lengths of the curves in Exercises 21–28.

21. The spiral $r = \theta^2$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \sqrt{5}$

22. The spiral $r = e^{\theta}/\sqrt{2}$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi$

23. The cardioid $r = 1 + \cos\theta$

24. The curve $r = a\sin^2(\theta/2)$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi$, $\quad a > 0$

25. The parabolic segment $r = 6/(1 + \cos\theta)$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi/2$

26. The parabolic segment $r = 2/(1 - \cos\theta)$, $\quad \pi/2 \le \theta \le \pi$

27. The curve $r = \cos^3(\theta/3)$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi/4$

28. The curve $r = \sqrt{1 + \sin 2\theta}$, $\quad 0 \le \theta \le \pi\sqrt{2}$

29. The length of the curve $r = f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$ Assuming that the necessary derivatives are continuous, show how the substitutions

$$x = f(\theta)\cos\theta, \quad y = f(\theta)\sin\theta$$

(Equations 2 in the text) transform

$$L = \int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{\left(\frac{dx}{d\theta}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta$$

into

$$L = \int_\alpha^\beta \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\theta}\right)^2}\, d\theta.$$

30. Circumferences of circles As usual, when faced with a new formula, it is a good idea to try it on familiar objects to be sure it gives results consistent with past experience. Use the length formula in Equation (3) to calculate the circumferences of the following circles ($a > 0$).

a. $r = a$ **b.** $r = a\cos\theta$ **c.** $r = a\sin\theta$

Theory and Examples

31. Average value If f is continuous, the average value of the polar coordinate r over the curve $r = f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$, with respect to θ is given by the formula

$$r_{\text{av}} = \frac{1}{\beta - \alpha}\int_\alpha^\beta f(\theta)\, d\theta.$$

Use this formula to find the average value of r with respect to θ over the following curves ($a > 0$).

a. The cardioid $r = a(1 - \cos\theta)$

b. The circle $r = a$

c. The circle $r = a\cos\theta$, $\quad -\pi/2 \le \theta \le \pi/2$

32. $r = f(\theta)$ *vs.* $r = 2f(\theta)$ Can anything be said about the relative lengths of the curves $r = f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$, and $r = 2f(\theta)$, $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$? Give reasons for your answer.

11.6 Conic Sections

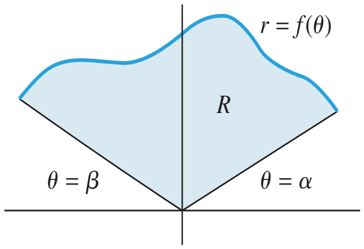
In this section we define and review parabolas, ellipses, and hyperbolas geometrically and derive their standard Cartesian equations. These curves are called *conic sections* or *conics* because they are formed by cutting a double cone with a plane (Figure 11.37). This geometry method was the only way they could be described by Greek mathematicians who did not have our tools of Cartesian or polar coordinates. In the next section we express the conics in polar coordinates.

Parabolas

DEFINITIONS A set that consists of all the points in a plane equidistant from a given fixed point and a given fixed line in the plane is a **parabola**. The fixed point is the **focus** of the parabola. The fixed line is the **directrix**.

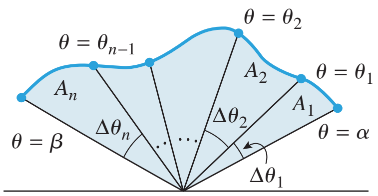
AREA IN POLAR COORDINATES

We begin our investigation of area in polar coordinates with a simple case.



▲ **Figure 7**

> **AREA PROBLEM IN POLAR COORDINATES** Suppose that α and β are angles that satisfy the condition
> $$\alpha < \beta \le \alpha + 2\pi$$
> and suppose that $f(\theta)$ is continuous and nonnegative for $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$. Find the area of the region R enclosed by the polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ and the rays $\theta = \alpha$ and $\theta = \beta$ (Figure 7).



▲ **Figure 8**

In rectangular coordinates we obtained areas under curves by dividing the region into an increasing number of vertical strips, approximating the strips by rectangles, and taking a limit. In polar coordinates rectangles are clumsy to work with, and it is better to partition the region into ***wedges*** by using rays

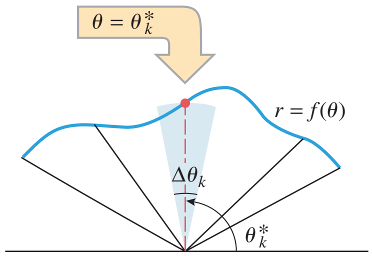
$$\theta = \theta_1,\ \theta = \theta_2, \ldots, \theta = \theta_{n-1}$$

such that

$$\alpha < \theta_1 < \theta_2 < \cdots < \theta_{n-1} < \beta$$

(Figure 8). As shown in that figure, the rays divide the region R into n wedges with areas $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n$ and central angles $\Delta\theta_1, \Delta\theta_2, \ldots, \Delta\theta_n$. The area of the entire region can be written as

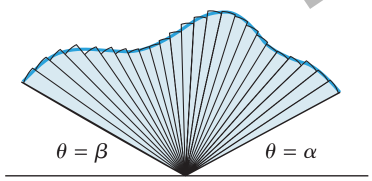
$$A = A_1 + A_2 + \cdots + A_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k \tag{4}$$



▲ **Figure 9**

If $\Delta\theta_k$ is small, then we can approximate the area A_k of the kth wedge by the area of a sector with central angle $\Delta\theta_k$ and radius $f(\theta_k^*)$, where $\theta = \theta_k^*$ is any ray that lies in the kth wedge (Figure 9). Thus, from (4) and Formula (5) of Appendix B for the area of a sector, we obtain

$$A = \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_k \approx \sum_{k=1}^{n} \tfrac{1}{2}[f(\theta_k^*)]^2 \Delta\theta_k \tag{5}$$



▲ **Figure 10**

If we now increase n in such a way that $\max \Delta\theta_k \to 0$, then the sectors will become better and better approximations of the wedges and it is reasonable to expect that (5) will approach the exact value of the area A (Figure 10); that is,

$$A = \lim_{\max \Delta\theta_k \to 0} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \tfrac{1}{2}[f(\theta_k^*)]^2 \Delta\theta_k = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \tfrac{1}{2}[f(\theta)]^2\, d\theta$$

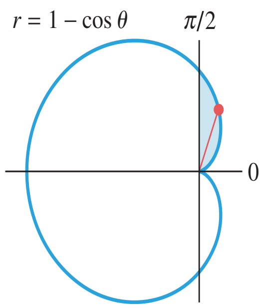
Note that the discussion above can easily be adapted to the case where $f(\theta)$ is nonpositive for $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$. We summarize this result below.

> **AREA IN POLAR COORDINATES** If α and β are angles that satisfy the condition
> $$\alpha < \beta \le \alpha + 2\pi$$
> and if $f(\theta)$ is continuous and either nonnegative or nonpositive for $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$, then the area A of the region R enclosed by the polar curve $r = f(\theta)$ $(\alpha \le \theta \le \beta)$ and the lines $\theta = \alpha$ and $\theta = \beta$ is
> $$A = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \tfrac{1}{2}[f(\theta)]^2\, d\theta = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} \tfrac{1}{2} r^2\, d\theta \tag{6}$$

The hardest part of applying (6) is determining the limits of integration. This can be done as follows:

> ***Area in Polar Coordinates: Limits of Integration***
>
> **Step 1.** Sketch the region R whose area is to be determined.
>
> **Step 2.** Draw an arbitrary "radial line" from the pole to the boundary curve $r = f(\theta)$.
>
> **Step 3.** Ask, "Over what interval of values must θ vary in order for the radial line to sweep out the region R?"
>
> **Step 4.** Your answer in Step 3 will determine the lower and upper limits of integration.

EXAMPLE 6 Find the area of the region in the first quadrant that is within the cardioid $r = 1 - \cos\theta$.



The shaded region is swept out by the radial line as θ varies from 0 to $\pi/2$.

Figure 11

Solution. The region and a typical radial line are shown in Figure 11. For the radial line to sweep out the region, θ must vary from 0 to $\pi/2$. Thus, from (6) with $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = \pi/2$, we obtain

$$A = \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} (1-\cos\theta)^2\,d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - 2\cos\theta + \cos^2\theta)\,d\theta$$

With the help of the identity $\cos^2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(1+\cos 2\theta)$, this can be rewritten as

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi/2}\left(\frac{3}{2} - 2\cos\theta + \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta\right)d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{3}{2}\theta - 2\sin\theta + \frac{1}{4}\sin 2\theta\right]_0^{\pi/2} = \frac{3}{8}\pi - 1$$ ◀

EXAMPLE 7 Find the entire area within the cardioid of Example 6.

Solution. For the radial line to sweep out the entire cardioid, θ must vary from 0 to 2π. Thus, from (6) with $\alpha = 0$ and $\beta = 2\pi$,

$$A = \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi} (1-\cos\theta)^2\,d\theta$$

If we proceed as in Example 6, this reduces to

$$A = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{2\pi}\left(\frac{3}{2} - 2\cos\theta + \frac{1}{2}\cos 2\theta\right)d\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

Alternative Solution. Since the cardioid is symmetric about the x-axis, we can calculate the portion of the area above the x-axis and double the result. In the portion of the cardioid above the x-axis, θ ranges from 0 to π, so that

$$A = 2\int_0^{\pi} \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta = \int_0^{\pi} (1-\cos\theta)^2\,d\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$$ ◀

USING SYMMETRY

Although Formula (6) is applicable if $r = f(\theta)$ is negative, area computations can sometimes be simplified by using symmetry to restrict the limits of integration to intervals where $r \geq 0$. This is illustrated in the next example.

EXAMPLE 8 Find the area of the region enclosed by the rose curve $r = \cos 2\theta$.

Solution. [illegible] the area in the first quadrant that is swept out for $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi/4$ is one-eighth of the total area inside the rose. Thus, from Formula (6)

$$A = 8\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1}{2}r^2\,d\theta = 4\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos^2 2\theta\,d\theta$$
$$= 4\int_0^{\pi/4} \frac{1}{2}(1+\cos 4\theta)\,d\theta = 2\int_0^{\pi/4} (1+\cos 4\theta)\,d\theta$$
$$= 2\theta + \frac{1}{2}\sin 4\theta\Big]_0^{\pi/4} = \frac{\pi}{2} \quad ◀$$

Sometimes the most natural way to satisfy the restriction $\alpha < \beta \leq \alpha + 2\pi$ required by Formula (6) is to use a negative value for α. For example, suppose that we are interested in finding the area of the shaded region in Figure 12*a* .The first step would be to determine the intersections of the cardioid $r = 4 + 4\cos\theta$ and the circle $r = 6$, since this information is needed for the limits of integration. To find the points of intersection, we can equate the two expressions for r. This yields

$$4 + 4\cos\theta = 6 \quad \text{or} \quad \cos\theta = \frac{1}{2}$$

which is satisfied by the positive angles

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \frac{5\pi}{3}$$

However, there is a problem here because the radial lines to the circle and cardioid do not sweep through the shaded region shown in Figure 12.*b* as θ varies over the interval $\pi/3 \leq \theta \leq 5\pi/3$. There are two ways to circumvent this problem—one is to take advantage of the symmetry by integrating over the interval $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi/3$ and doubling the result, and the second is to use a negative lower limit of integration and integrate over the interval $-\pi/3 \leq \theta \leq \pi/3$ (Figure 12*c*). The two methods are illustrated in the next example.

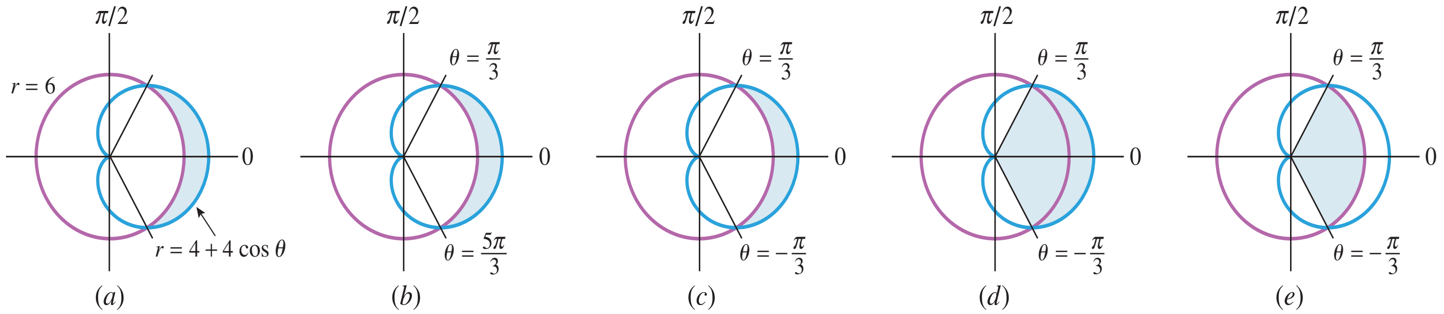


Figure 12

EXAMPLE 9 Find the area of the region that is inside of the cardioid $r = 4 + 4\cos\theta$ and outside of the circle $r = 6$.

Solution Using a Negative Angle. The area of the region can be obtained by subtracting the areas in Figures 12*d* and 12*e*:

$$A = \int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}(4 + 4\cos\theta)^2\, d\theta - \int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}(6)^2\, d\theta$$

Area inside cardioid minus area inside circle.

$$= \int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}[(4 + 4\cos\theta)^2 - 36]\, d\theta = \int_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} (16\cos\theta + 8\cos^2\theta - 10)\, d\theta$$

$$= \left[16\sin\theta + (4\theta + 2\sin 2\theta) - 10\,\theta\right]_{-\pi/3}^{\pi/3} = 18\sqrt{3} - 4\pi$$

Solution Using Symmetry. Using symmetry, we can calculate the area above the polar axis and double it. This yields (verify)

$$A = 2\int_{0}^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{2}[(4 + 4\cos\theta)^2 - 36]\, d\theta = 2(9\sqrt{3} - 2\pi) = 18\sqrt{3} - 4\pi$$

which agrees with the preceding result. ◄

3.1 PLANE CURVES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

■ Plane Curves and Parametric Equations

We can think of a curve as the path of a point moving in the plane; the x- and y-coordinates of the point are then functions of time. This idea leads to the following definition.

PLANE CURVES AND PARAMETRIC EQUATIONS

If f and g are functions defined on an interval I, then the set of points $(f(t), g(t))$ is a **plane curve**. The equations

$$x = f(t) \qquad y = g(t)$$

where $t \in I$, are **parametric equations** for the curve, with **parameter** t.

EXAMPLE 1 ■ Sketching a Plane Curve

Sketch the curve defined by the parametric equations

$$x = t^2 - 3t \qquad y = t - 1$$

SOLUTION For every value of t we get a point on the curve. For example, if $t = 0$, then $x = 0$ and $y = -1$, so the corresponding point is $(0, -1)$. In Figure 1 we plot the points (x, y) determined by the values of t shown in the following table.

t	x	y
-2	10	-3
-1	4	-2
0	0	-1
1	-2	0
2	-2	1
3	0	2
4	4	3
5	10	4

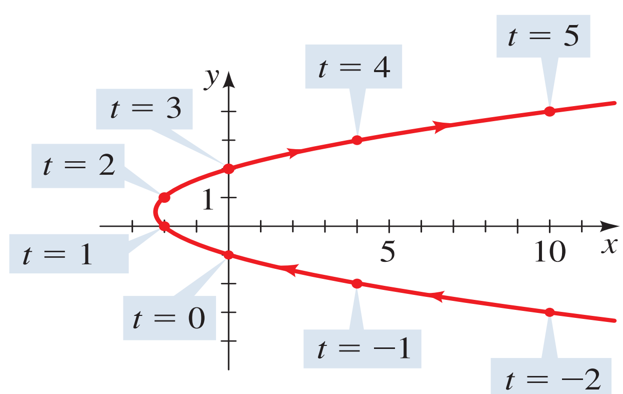


FIGURE 1

As t increases, a particle whose position is given by the parametric equations moves along the curve in the direction of the arrows.

If we replace t by $-t$ in Example 1, we obtain the parametric equations

$$x = t^2 + 3t \qquad y = -t - 1$$

The graph of these parametric equations (see Figure 2) is the same as the curve in Figure 1 but traced out in the opposite direction. On the other hand, if we replace t by $2t$ in Example 1, we obtain the parametric equations

$$x = 4t^2 - 6t \qquad y = 2t - 1$$

The graph of these parametric equations (see Figure 3) is again the same but is traced out "twice as fast." *Thus a parametrization contains more information than just the shape of the curve; it also indicates* how *the curve is being traced out*.

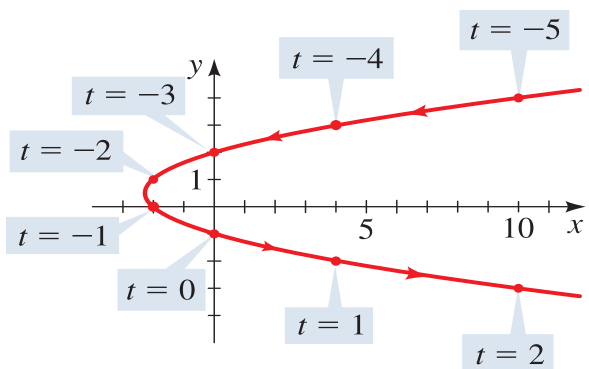


FIGURE 2 $x = t^2 + 3t, y = -t - 1$

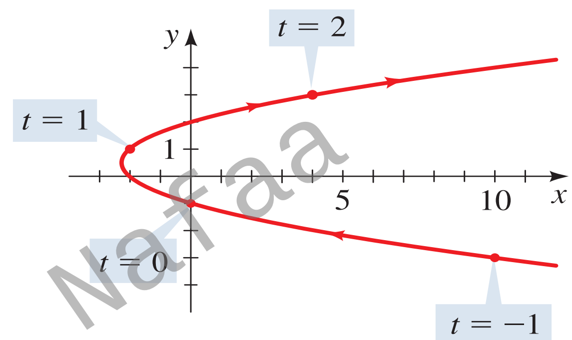


FIGURE 3 $x = 4t^2 - 6t, y = 2t - 1$

Eliminating the Parameter

Often a curve given by parametric equations can also be represented by a single rectangular equation in x and y. The process of finding this equation is called *eliminating the parameter*. One way to do this is to solve for t in one equation, then substitute into the other.

EXAMPLE 2 ■ Eliminating the Parameter

Eliminate the parameter in the parametric equations of Example 1.

SOLUTION First we solve for t in the simpler equation, then we substitute into the other equation. From the equation $y = t - 1$ we get $t = y + 1$. Substituting into the equation for x, we get

$$x = t^2 - 3t = (y + 1)^2 - 3(y + 1) = y^2 - y - 2$$

Thus the curve in Example 1 has the rectangular equation $x = y^2 - y - 2$, so it is a parabola.

EXAMPLE 3 ■ Modeling Circular Motion

The following parametric equations model the position of a moving object at time t (in seconds):

$$x = \cos t \qquad y = \sin t \qquad t \geq 0$$

Describe and graph the path of the object.

SOLUTION To identify the curve, we eliminate the parameter. Since $\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t = 1$ and since $x = \cos t$ and $y = \sin t$ for every point (x, y) on the curve, we have

$$x^2 + y^2 = (\cos t)^2 + (\sin t)^2 = 1$$

This means that all points on the curve satisfy the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, so the graph is a circle of radius 1 centered at the origin. As t increases from 0 to 2π, the point given by the parametric equations starts at $(1, 0)$ and moves counterclockwise once around the circle, as shown in Figure 4. So the object completes one revolution around the circle in 2π seconds. Notice that the parameter t can be interpreted as the angle shown in the figure.

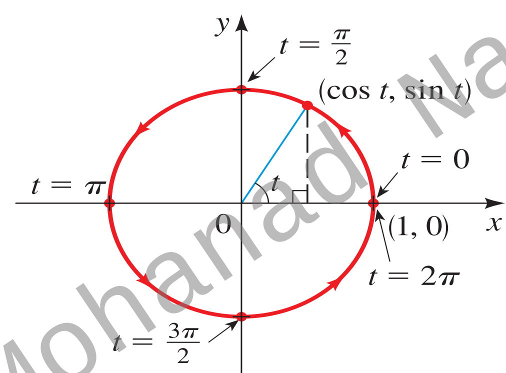


FIGURE 4

EXAMPLE 4 ■ Sketching a Parametric Curve

Eliminate the parameter, and sketch the graph of the parametric equations

$$x = \sin t \qquad y = 2 - \cos^2 t$$

SOLUTION To eliminate the parameter, we first use the trigonometric identity $\cos^2 t = 1 - \sin^2 t$ to change the second equation:

$$y = 2 - \cos^2 t = 2 - (1 - \sin^2 t) = 1 + \sin^2 t$$

Now we can substitute $\sin t = x$ from the first equation to get

$$y = 1 + x^2$$

so the point (x, y) moves along the parabola $y = 1 + x^2$. However, since $-1 \leq \sin t \leq 1$, we have $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, so the parametric equations represent only the part of the parabola between $x = -1$ and $x = 1$. Since $\sin t$ is periodic, the point $(x, y) = (\sin t, 2 - \cos^2 t)$ moves back and forth infinitely often along the parabola between the points $(-1, 2)$ and $(1, 2)$, as shown in Figure 5.

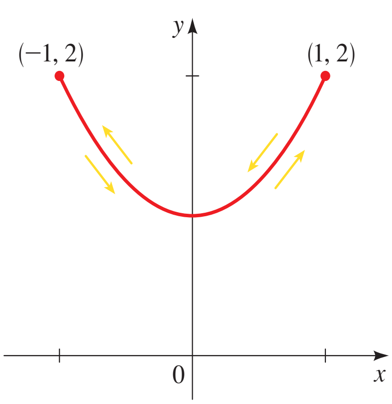


FIGURE 5

Finding Parametric Equations for a Curve

It is often possible to find parametric equations for a curve by using some geometric properties that define the curve, as in the next two examples.

EXAMPLE 5 ■ Finding Parametric Equations for a Graph

Find parametric equations for the line of slope 3 that passes through the point $(2, 6)$.

SOLUTION Let's start at the point $(2, 6)$ and move up and to the right along this line. Because the line has slope 3, for every 1 unit we move to the right, we must move up 3 units. In other words, if we increase the x-coordinate by t units, we must correspondingly increase the y-coordinate by $3t$ units. This leads to the parametric equations

$$x = 2 + t \qquad y = 6 + 3t$$

To confirm that these equations give the desired line, we eliminate the parameter. We solve for t in the first equation and substitute into the second to get

$$y = 6 + 3(x - 2) = 3x$$

Thus the slope-intercept form of the equation of this line is $y = 3x$, which is a line of slope 3 that does pass through $(2, 6)$ as required. The graph is shown in Figure 6.

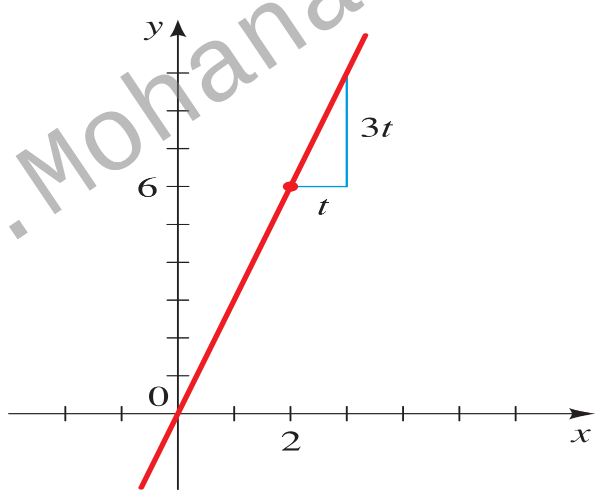
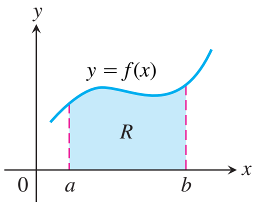


FIGURE 6

63. Consider the region R bounded by the graphs of $y = f(x) > 0$, $x = a > 0$, $x = b > a$, and $y = 0$ (see accompanying figure). If the volume of the solid formed by revolving R about the x-axis is 4π, and the volume of the solid formed by revolving R about the line $y = -1$ is 8π, find the area of R.



64. Consider the region R given in Exercise 63. If the volume of the solid formed by revolving R around the x-axis is 6π, and the volume of the solid formed by revolving R around the line $y = -2$ is 10π, find the area of R.

6.2 Volumes Using Cylindrical Shells

In Section 6.1 we defined the volume of a solid as the definite integral $V = \int_a^b A(x)\,dx$, where $A(x)$ is an integrable cross-sectional area of the solid from $x = a$ to $x = b$. The area $A(x)$ was obtained by slicing through the solid with a plane perpendicular to the x-axis. However, this method of slicing is sometimes awkward to apply, as we will illustrate in our first example. To overcome this difficulty, we use the same integral definition for volume, but obtain the area by slicing through the solid in a different way.

Slicing with Cylinders

Suppose we slice through the solid using circular cylinders of increasing radii, like cookie cutters. We slice straight down through the solid so that the axis of each cylinder is parallel to the y-axis. The vertical axis of each cylinder is the same line, but the radii of the cylinders increase with each slice. In this way the solid is sliced up into thin cylindrical shells of constant thickness that grow outward from their common axis, like circular tree rings. Unrolling a cylindrical shell shows that its volume is approximately that of a rectangular slab with area $A(x)$ and thickness Δx. This slab interpretation allows us to apply the same integral definition for volume as before. The following example provides some insight before we derive the general method.

EXAMPLE 1 The region enclosed by the x-axis and the parabola $y = f(x) = 3x - x^2$ is revolved about the vertical line $x = -1$ to generate a solid (Figure 6.16). Find the volume of the solid.

Solution Using the washer method from Section 6.1 would be awkward here because we would need to express the x-values of the left and right sides of the parabola in Figure 6.16a in terms of y. (These x-values are the inner and outer radii for a typical washer, requiring us to solve $y = 3x - x^2$ for x, which leads to complicated formulas.) Instead of rotating a horizontal strip of thickness Δy, we rotate a *vertical strip* of thickness Δx. This rotation produces a *cylindrical shell* of height y_k above a point x_k within the base of the vertical strip and of thickness Δx. An example of a cylindrical shell is shown as the orange-shaded region in Figure 6.17. We can think of the cylindrical shell shown in the figure as approximating a slice of the solid obtained by cutting straight down through it, parallel to the axis of revolution, all the way around close to the inside hole. We then cut another cylindrical slice around the enlarged hole, then another, and so on, obtaining n cylinders. The radii of the cylinders gradually increase, and the heights of

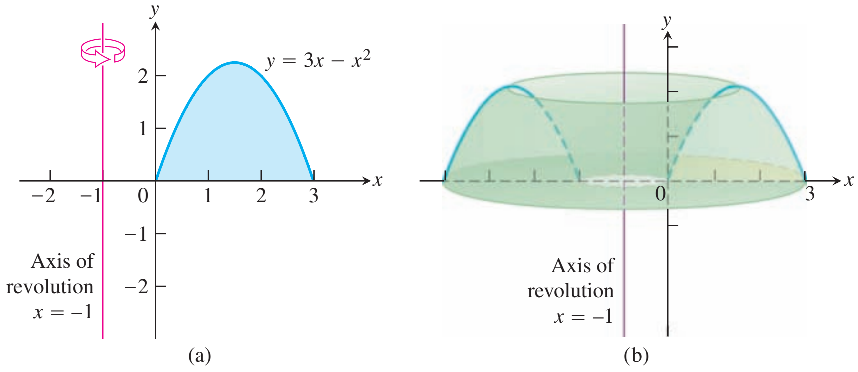


FIGURE 6.16 (a) The graph of the region in Example 1, before revolution. (b) The solid formed when the region in part (a) is revolved about the axis of revolution $x = -1$.

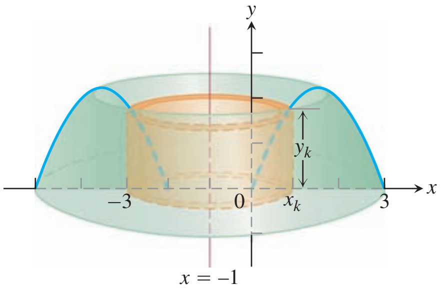


FIGURE 6.17 A cylindrical shell of height y_k obtained by rotating a vertical strip of thickness Δx_k about the line $x = -1$. The outer radius of the cylinder occurs at x_k, where the height of the parabola is $y_k = 3x_k - x_k^2$ (Example 1).

the cylinders follow the contour of the parabola: shorter to taller, then back to shorter (Figure 6.16a).

Each slice is sitting over a subinterval of the x-axis of length (width) Δx_k. Its radius is approximately $(1 + x_k)$, and its height is approximately $3x_k - x_k^2$. If we unroll the cylinder at x_k and flatten it out, it becomes (approximately) a rectangular slab with thickness Δx_k (Figure 6.18). The outer circumference of the kth cylinder is $2\pi \cdot \text{radius} = 2\pi(1 + x_k)$, and this is the length of the rolled-out rectangular slab. Its volume is approximated by that of a rectangular solid,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta V_k &= \text{circumference} \times \text{height} \times \text{thickness}\\ &= 2\pi(1 + x_k) \cdot \left(3x_k - x_k^2\right) \cdot \Delta x_k.\end{aligned}$$

Summing together the volumes ΔV_k of the individual cylindrical shells over the interval [0, 3] gives the Riemann sum

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta V_k = \sum_{k=1}^{n} 2\pi(x_k + 1)\left(3x_k - x_k^2\right) \Delta x_k.$$

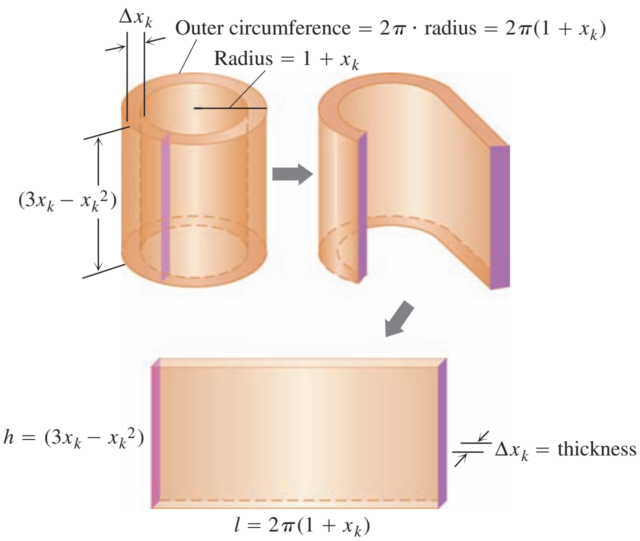


FIGURE 6.18 Cutting and unrolling a cylindrical shell gives a nearly rectangular solid (Example 1).

Taking the limit as the thickness $\Delta x_k \to 0$ and $n \to \infty$ gives the volume integral

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} 2\pi(x_k + 1)\left(3x_k - x_k^2\right) \Delta x_k \\ &= \int_0^3 2\pi(x+1)(3x - x^2)\,dx \\ &= \int_0^3 2\pi(3x^2 + 3x - x^3 - x^2)\,dx \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^3 (2x^2 + 3x - x^3)\,dx \\ &= 2\pi\left[\frac{2}{3}x^3 + \frac{3}{2}x^2 - \frac{1}{4}x^4\right]_0^3 = \frac{45\pi}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

We now generalize the procedure used in Example 1.

The Shell Method

Suppose the region bounded by the graph of a nonnegative continuous function $y = f(x)$ and the x-axis over the finite closed interval $[a, b]$ lies to the right of the vertical line $x = L$ (Figure 6.19a). We assume $a \geq L$, so the vertical line may touch the region, but not pass through it. We generate a solid S by rotating this region about the vertical line L.

Let P be a partition of the interval $[a, b]$ by the points $a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b$, and let c_k be the midpoint of the kth subinterval $[x_{k-1}, x_k]$. We approximate the region in Figure 6.19a with rectangles based on this partition of $[a, b]$. A typical approximating rectangle has height $f(c_k)$ and width $\Delta x_k = x_k - x_{k-1}$. If this rectangle is rotated about the vertical line $x = L$, then a shell is swept out, as in Figure 6.19b. A formula from geometry tells us that the volume of the shell swept out by the rectangle is

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta V_k &= 2\pi \times \text{average shell radius} \times \text{shell height} \times \text{thickness} \\ &= 2\pi \cdot (c_k - L) \cdot f(c_k) \cdot \Delta x_k. \end{aligned}$$

The volume of a cylindrical shell of height h with inner radius r and outer radius R is

$$\pi R^2 h - \pi r^2 h = 2\pi\left(\frac{R+r}{2}\right)(h)(R - r)$$

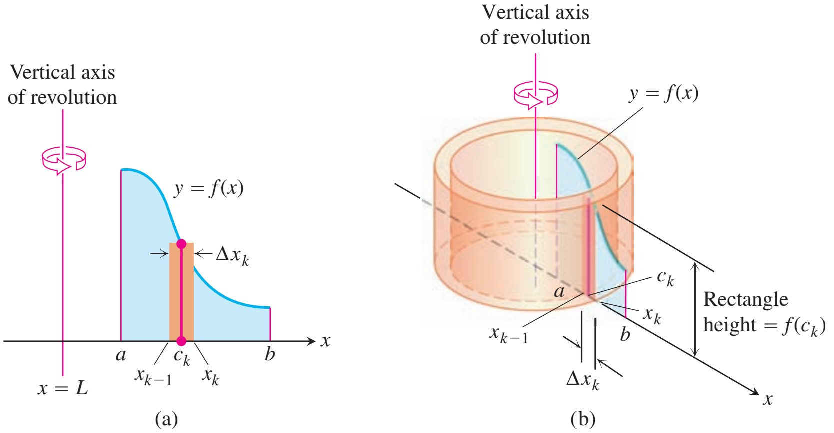


FIGURE 6.19 When the region shown in (a) is revolved about the vertical line $x = L$, a solid is produced which can be sliced into cylindrical shells. A typical shell is shown in (b).

We approximate the volume of the solid S by summing the volumes of the shells swept out by the n rectangles based on P:

$$V \approx \sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta V_k.$$

The limit of this Riemann sum as each $\Delta x_k \to 0$ and $n \to \infty$ gives the volume of the solid as a definite integral:

$$\begin{aligned} V = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \Delta V_k &= \int_a^b 2\pi(\text{shell radius})(\text{shell height})\, dx. \\ &= \int_a^b 2\pi(x - L)f(x)\, dx. \end{aligned}$$

We refer to the variable of integration, here x, as the **thickness variable**. We use the first integral, rather than the second containing a formula for the integrand, to emphasize the *process* of the shell method. This will allow for rotations about a horizontal line L as well.

Shell Formula for Revolution About a Vertical Line

The volume of the solid generated by revolving the region between the x-axis and the graph of a continuous function $y = f(x) \geq 0$, $L \leq a \leq x \leq b$, about a vertical line $x = L$ is

$$V = \int_a^b 2\pi \begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{radius}\end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{height}\end{pmatrix} dx.$$

EXAMPLE 2 The region bounded by the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$, the x-axis, and the line $x = 4$ is revolved about the y-axis to generate a solid. Find the volume of the solid.

Solution Sketch the region and draw a line segment across it *parallel* to the axis of revolution (Figure 6.20a). Label the segment's height (shell height) and distance from the axis of revolution (shell radius). (We drew the shell in Figure 6.20b, but you need not do that.)

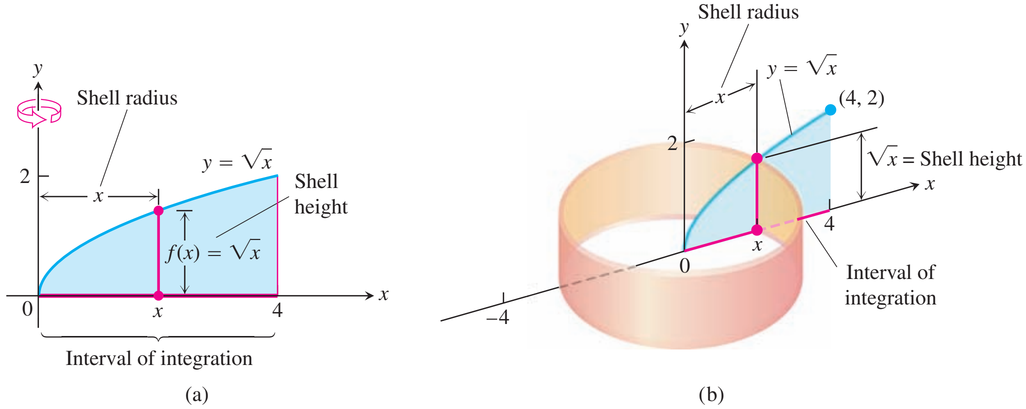


FIGURE 6.20 (a) The region, shell dimensions, and interval of integration in Example 2. (b) The shell swept out by the vertical segment in part (a) with a width Δx.

The shell thickness variable is x, so the limits of integration for the shell formula are $a = 0$ and $b = 4$ (Figure 6.20). The volume is then

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_a^b 2\pi \begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{radius}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{height}\end{pmatrix} dx \\ &= \int_0^4 2\pi(x)\left(\sqrt{x}\right) dx \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^4 x^{3/2}\, dx = 2\pi\left[\frac{2}{5}x^{5/2}\right]_0^4 = \frac{128\pi}{5}. \end{aligned}$$

So far, we have used vertical axes of revolution. For horizontal axes, we replace the x's with y's.

EXAMPLE 3 The region bounded by the curve $y = \sqrt{x}$, the x-axis, and the line $x = 4$ is revolved about the x-axis to generate a solid. Find the volume of the solid by the shell method.

Solution This is the solid whose volume was found by the disk method in Example 4 of Section 6.1. Now we find its volume by the shell method. First, sketch the region and draw a line segment across it *parallel* to the axis of revolution (Figure 6.21a). Label the segment's length (shell height) and distance from the axis of revolution (shell radius). (We drew the shell in Figure 6.21b, but you need not do that.)

In this case, the shell thickness variable is y, so the limits of integration for the shell formula method are $a = 0$ and $b = 2$ (along the y-axis in Figure 6.21). The volume of the solid is

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_a^b 2\pi \begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{radius}\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\text{shell}\\ \text{height}\end{pmatrix} dy \\ &= \int_0^2 2\pi(y)(4 - y^2)\, dy \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^2 (4y - y^3)\, dy \\ &= 2\pi\left[2y^2 - \frac{y^4}{4}\right]_0^2 = 8\pi. \end{aligned}$$

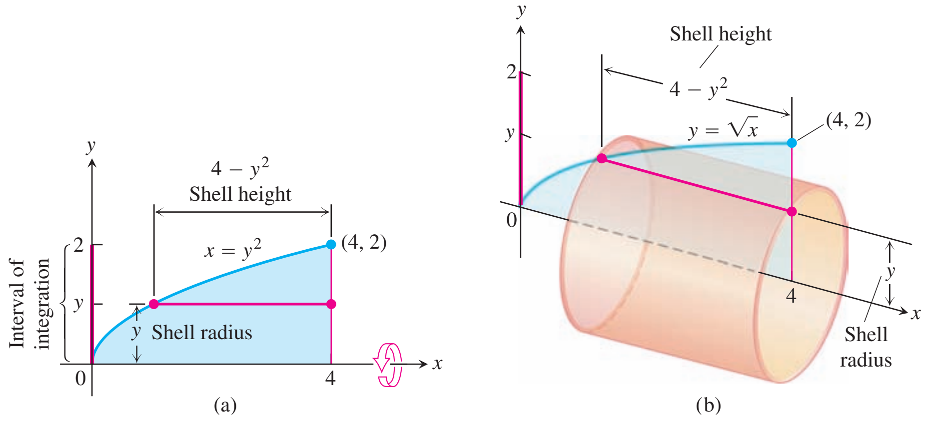


FIGURE 6.21 (a) The region, shell dimensions, and interval of integration in Example 3. (b) The shell swept out by the horizontal segment in part (a) with a width Δy.

Summary of the Shell Method

Regardless of the position of the axis of revolution (horizontal or vertical), the steps for implementing the shell method are these.

1. *Draw the region and sketch a line segment* across it *parallel* to the axis of revolution. *Label* the segment's height or length (shell height) and distance from the axis of revolution (shell radius).
2. *Find the limits of integration* for the thickness variable.
3. *Integrate* the product 2π (shell radius) (shell height) with respect to the thickness variable (x or y) to find the volume.

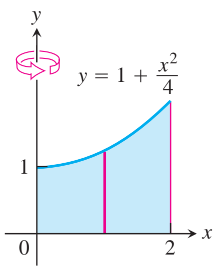
The shell method gives the same answer as the washer method when both are used to calculate the volume of a region. We do not prove that result here, but it is illustrated in Exercises 37 and 38. (Exercise 45 outlines a proof.) Both volume formulas are actually special cases of a general volume formula we will look at when studying double and triple integrals in Chapter 15. That general formula also allows for computing volumes of solids other than those swept out by regions of revolution.

Exercises 6.2

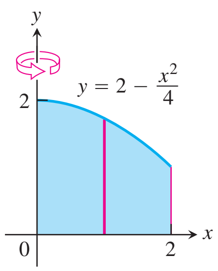
Revolution About the Axes

In Exercises 1–6, use the shell method to find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the shaded region about the indicated axis.

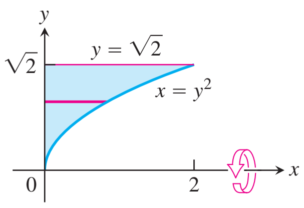
1.



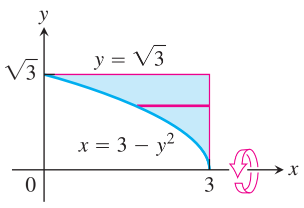
2.



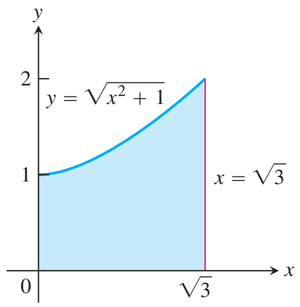
3.



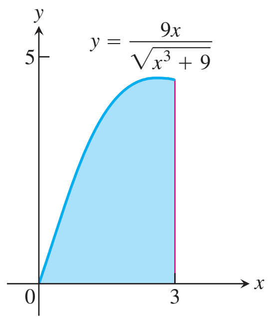
4.



5. The y-axis



6. The y-axis



Revolution About the y-Axis

Use the shell method to find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the regions bounded by the curves and lines in Exercises 7–12 about the y-axis.

7. $y = x, \quad y = -x/2, \quad x = 2$

8. $y = 2x, \quad y = x/2, \quad x = 1$

9. $y = x^2, \quad y = 2 - x, \quad x = 0, \quad \text{for } x \geq 0$

10. $y = 2 - x^2, \quad y = x^2, \quad x = 0$

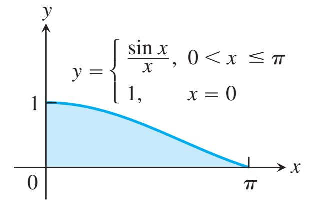
11. $y = 2x - 1, \quad y = \sqrt{x}, \quad x = 0$

12. $y = 3/\left(2\sqrt{x}\right), \quad y = 0, \quad x = 1, \quad x = 4$

13. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} (\sin x)/x, & 0 < x \leq \pi \\ 1, & x = 0 \end{cases}$

a. Show that $x f(x) = \sin x, 0 \leq x \leq \pi$.

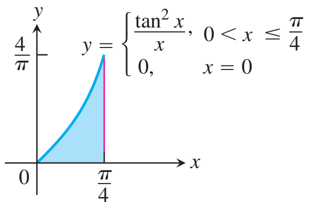
b. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the shaded region about the y-axis in the accompanying figure.



14. Let $g(x) = \begin{cases} (\tan x)^2/x, & 0 < x \leq \pi/4 \\ 0, & x = 0 \end{cases}$

a. Show that $x g(x) = (\tan x)^2, 0 \leq x \leq \pi/4$.

b. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the shaded region about the y-axis in the accompanying figure.



Revolution About the x-Axis

Use the shell method to find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the regions bounded by the curves and lines in Exercises 15–22 about the x-axis.

15. $x = \sqrt{y}, \quad x = -y, \quad y = 2$

16. $x = y^2, \quad x = -y, \quad y = 2, \quad y \geq 0$

17. $x = 2y - y^2, \quad x = 0$

18. $x = 2y - y^2, \quad x = y$

19. $y = |x|, \quad y = 1$

20. $y = x, \quad y = 2x, \quad y = 2$

21. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = 0, \quad y = x - 2$

22. $y = \sqrt{x}, \quad y = 0, \quad y = 2 - x$

Revolution About Horizontal and Vertical Lines

In Exercises 23–26, use the shell method to find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the regions bounded by the given curves about the given lines.

23. $y = 3x, \quad y = 0, \quad x = 2$

a. The y-axis **b.** The line $x = 4$

c. The line $x = -1$ **d.** The x-axis

e. The line $y = 7$ **f.** The line $y = -2$

24. $y = x^3, \quad y = 8, \quad x = 0$

a. The y-axis **b.** The line $x = 3$

c. The line $x = -2$ **d.** The x-axis

e. The line $y = 8$ **f.** The line $y = -1$

25. $y = x + 2, \quad y = x^2$

a. The line $x = 2$ **b.** The line $x = -1$

c. The x-axis **d.** The line $y = 4$

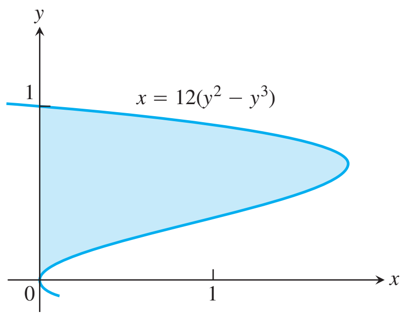
26. $y = x^4, \quad y = 4 - 3x^2$

a. The line $x = 1$ **c.** The x-axis

In Exercises 27 and 28, use the shell method to find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the shaded regions about the indicated axes.

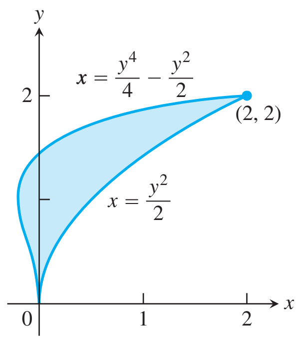
27. **a.** The x-axis **b.** The line $y = 1$

c. The line $y = 8/5$ **d.** The line $y = -2/5$



28. **a.** The x-axis **b.** The line $y = 2$

c. The line $y = 5$ **d.** The line $y = -5/8$



Choosing the Washer Method or Shell Method

For some regions, both the washer and shell methods work well for the solid generated by revolving the region about the coordinate axes, but this is not always the case. When a region is revolved about the y-axis, for example, and washers are used, we must integrate with respect to y. It may not be possible, however, to express the integrand in terms of y. In such a case, the shell method allows us to integrate with respect to x instead. Exercises 29 and 30 provide some insight.

29. Compute the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region bounded by $y = x$ and $y = x^2$ about each coordinate axis using

a. the shell method. **b.** the washer method.

30. Compute the volume of the solid generated by revolving the triangular region bounded by the lines $2y = x + 4$, $y = x$, and $x = 0$ about

a. the x-axis using the washer method.

b. the y-axis using the shell method.

c. the line $x = 4$ using the shell method.

d. the line $y = 8$ using the washer method.

In Exercises 31–36, find the volumes of the solids generated by revolving the regions about the given axes. If you think it would be better to use washers in any given instance, feel free to do so.

31. The triangle with vertices (1, 1), (1, 2), and (2, 2) about

a. the x-axis **b.** the y-axis

c. the line $x = 10/3$ **d.** the line $y = 1$

32. The region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$, $y = 2$, $x = 0$ about

a. the x-axis **b.** the y-axis

c. the line $x = 4$ **d.** the line $y = 2$

33. The region in the first quadrant bounded by the curve $x = y - y^3$ and the y-axis about

a. the x-axis **b.** the line $y = 1$

34. The region in the first quadrant bounded by $x = y - y^3$, $x = 1$, and $y = 1$ about

a. the x-axis **b.** the y-axis

c. the line $x = 1$ **d.** the line $y = 1$

35. The region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = x^2/8$ about

a. the x-axis **b.** the y-axis

36. The region bounded by $y = 2x - x^2$ and $y = x$ about

a. the y-axis **b.** the line $x = 1$

37. The region in the first quadrant that is bounded above by the curve $y = 1/x^{1/4}$, on the left by the line $x = 1/16$, and below by the line $y = 1$ is revolved about the x-axis to generate a solid. Find the volume of the solid by

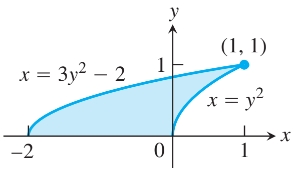
a. the washer method. **b.** the shell method.

38. The region in the first quadrant that is bounded above by the curve $y = 1/\sqrt{x}$, on the left by the line $x = 1/4$, and below by the line $y = 1$ is revolved about the y-axis to generate a solid. Find the volume of the solid by

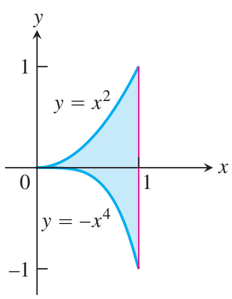
a. the washer method. **b.** the shell method.

Theory and Examples

39. The region shown here is to be revolved about the x-axis to generate a solid. Which of the methods (disk, washer, shell) could you use to find the volume of the solid? How many integrals would be required in each case? Explain.



40. The region shown here is to be revolved about the y-axis to generate a solid. Which of the methods (disk, washer, shell) could you use to find the volume of the solid? How many integrals would be required in each case? Give reasons for your answers.



41. A bead is formed from a sphere of radius 5 by drilling through a diameter of the sphere with a drill bit of radius 3.

a. Find the volume of the bead.

b. Find the volume of the removed portion of the sphere.

42. A Bundt cake, well known for having a ringed shape, is formed by revolving around the y-axis the region bounded by the graph of $y = \sin(x^2 - 1)$ and the x-axis over the interval $1 \le x \le \sqrt{1 + \pi}$. Find the volume of the cake.

43. Derive the formula for the volume of a right circular cone of height h and radius r using an appropriate solid of revolution.

44. Derive the equation for the volume of a sphere of radius r using the shell method.

45. Equivalence of the washer and shell methods for finding volume Let f be differentiable and increasing on the interval $a \le x \le b$, with $a > 0$, and suppose that f has a differentiable inverse, f^{-1}. Revolve about the y-axis the region bounded by the graph of f and the lines $x = a$ and $y = f(b)$ to generate a solid. Then the values of the integrals given by the washer and shell methods for the volume have identical values:

$$\int_{f(a)}^{f(b)} \pi\left((f^{-1}(y))^2 - a^2\right) dy = \int_a^b 2\pi x(f(b) - f(x))\, dx.$$

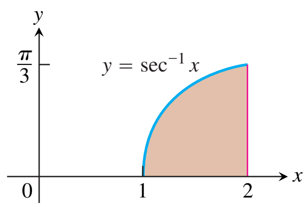
To prove this equality, define

$$W(t) = \int_{f(a)}^{f(t)} \pi\left((f^{-1}(y))^2 - a^2\right) dy$$

$$S(t) = \int_a^t 2\pi x(f(t) - f(x))\, dx.$$

Then show that the functions W and S agree at a point of $[a, b]$ and have identical derivatives on $[a, b]$. As you saw in Section 4.8, Exercise 128, this will guarantee $W(t) = S(t)$ for all t in $[a, b]$. In particular, $W(b) = S(b)$. (*Source:* "Disks and Shells Revisited," by Walter Carlip, *American Mathematical Monthly*, Vol. 98, No. 2, Feb. 1991, pp. 154–156.)

46. The region between the curve $y = \sec^{-1} x$ and the x-axis from $x = 1$ to $x = 2$ (shown here) is revolved about the y-axis to generate a solid. Find the volume of the solid.



47. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region enclosed by the graphs of $y = e^{-x^2}$, $y = 0$, $x = 0$, and $x = 1$ about the y-axis.

48. Find the volume of the solid generated by revolving the region enclosed by the graphs of $y = e^{x/2}$, $y = 1$, and $x = \ln 3$ about the x-axis.

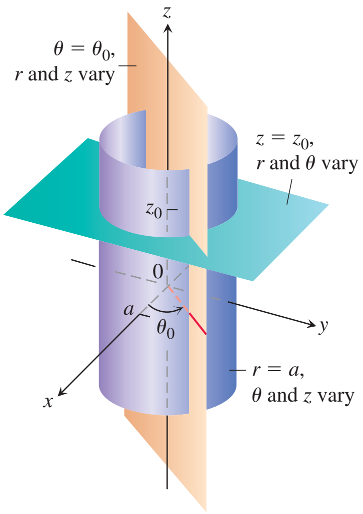


FIGURE 15.44 Constant-coordinate equations in cylindrical coordinates yield cylinders and planes.

The values of x, y, r, and θ in rectangular and cylindrical coordinates are related by the usual equations.

Equations Relating Rectangular (x, y, z) and Cylindrical (r, θ, z) Coordinates

$$x = r\cos\theta, \qquad y = r\sin\theta, \qquad z = z,$$
$$r^2 = x^2 + y^2, \qquad \tan\theta = y/x$$

In cylindrical coordinates, the equation $r = a$ describes not just a circle in the xy-plane but an entire cylinder about the z-axis (Figure 15.44). The z-axis is given by $r = 0$. The equation $\theta = \theta_0$ describes the plane that contains the z-axis and makes an angle θ_0 with the positive x-axis. And, just as in rectangular coordinates, the equation $z = z_0$ describes a plane perpendicular to the z-axis.

Cylindrical coordinates are good for describing cylinders whose axes run along the z-axis and planes that either contain the z-axis or lie perpendicular to the z-axis. Surfaces like these have equations of constant coordinate value:

$$r = 4 \qquad \text{Cylinder, radius 4, axis the } z\text{-axis}$$
$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{3} \qquad \text{Plane containing the } z\text{-axis}$$
$$z = 2. \qquad \text{Plane perpendicular to the } z\text{-axis}$$

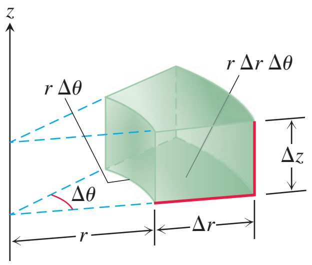


FIGURE 15.45 In cylindrical coordinates the volume of the wedge is approximated by the product $\Delta V = \Delta z\, r\, \Delta r\, \Delta\theta$.

When computing triple integrals over a region D in cylindrical coordinates, we partition the region into n small cylindrical wedges, rather than into rectangular boxes. In the kth cylindrical wedge, r, θ and z change by Δr_k, $\Delta\theta_k$, and Δz_k, and the largest of these numbers among all the cylindrical wedges is called the **norm** of the partition. We define the triple integral as a limit of Riemann sums using these wedges. The volume of such a cylindrical wedge ΔV_k is obtained by taking the area ΔA_k of its base in the $r\theta$-plane and multiplying by the height Δz (Figure 15.45).

For a point (r_k, θ_k, z_k) in the center of the kth wedge, we calculated in polar coordinates that $\Delta A_k = r_k\, \Delta r_k\, \Delta\theta_k$. So $\Delta V_k = \Delta z_k\, r_k\, \Delta r_k\, \Delta\theta_k$ and a Riemann sum for f over D has the form

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(r_k, \theta_k, z_k)\, \Delta z_k\, r_k\, \Delta r_k\, \Delta\theta_k.$$

The triple integral of a function f over D is obtained by taking a limit of such Riemann sums with partitions whose norms approach zero:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} S_n = \iiint_D f\, dV = \iiint_D f\, dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta.$$

Volume Differential in Cylindrical Coordinates

$$dV = dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta$$

Triple integrals in cylindrical coordinates are then evaluated as iterated integrals, as in the following example. Although the definition of cylindrical coordinates makes sense without any restrictions on θ, in most situations when integrating, we will need to restrict θ to an interval of length 2π. So we impose the requirement that $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$, where $0 \le \beta - \alpha \le 2\pi$.

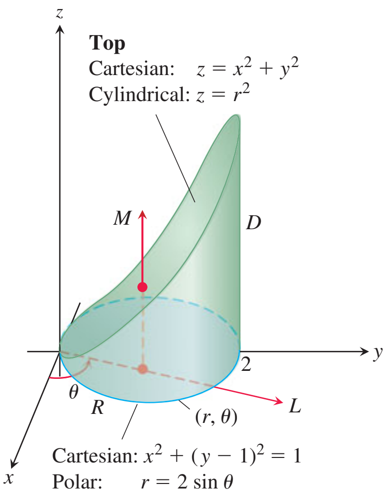


FIGURE 15.46 Finding the limits of integration for evaluating an integral in cylindrical coordinates (Example 1).

EXAMPLE 1 Find the limits of integration in cylindrical coordinates for integrating a function $f(r, \theta, z)$ over the region D bounded below by the plane $z = 0$, laterally by the circular cylinder $x^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 1$, and above by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$.

Solution The base of D is also the region's projection R on the xy-plane. The boundary of R is the circle $x^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 1$. Its polar coordinate equation is

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + (y - 1)^2 &= 1 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 2y + 1 &= 1 \\ r^2 - 2r \sin \theta &= 0 \\ r &= 2 \sin \theta. \end{aligned}$$

The region is sketched in Figure 15.46.

We find the limits of integration, starting with the z-limits. A line M through a typical point (r, θ) in R parallel to the z-axis enters D at $z = 0$ and leaves at $z = x^2 + y^2 = r^2$.

Next we find the r-limits of integration. A ray L through (r, θ) from the origin enters R at $r = 0$ and leaves at $r = 2 \sin \theta$.

Finally we find the θ-limits of integration. As L sweeps across R, the angle θ it makes with the positive x-axis runs from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = \pi$. The integral is

$$\iiint_D f(r, \theta, z)\, dV = \int_0^{\pi} \int_0^{2 \sin \theta} \int_0^{r^2} f(r, \theta, z)\, dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta. \quad \blacksquare$$

Example 1 illustrates a good procedure for finding limits of integration in cylindrical coordinates. The procedure is summarized as follows.

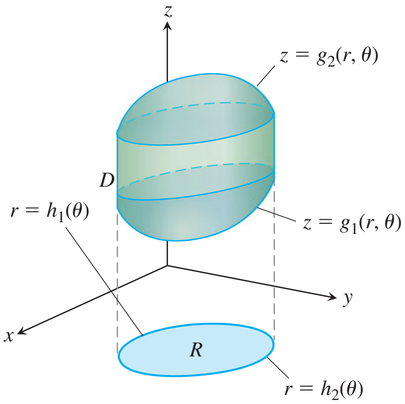
How to Integrate in Cylindrical Coordinates

To evaluate

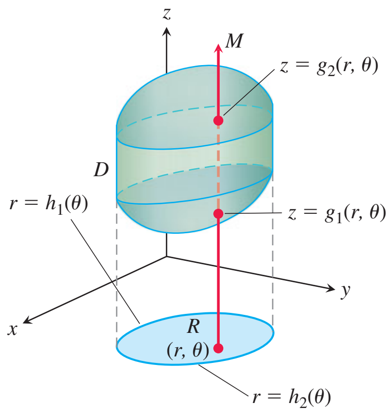
$$\iiint_D f(r, \theta, z)\, dV$$

over a region D in space in cylindrical coordinates, integrating first with respect to z, then with respect to r, and finally with respect to θ, take the following steps.

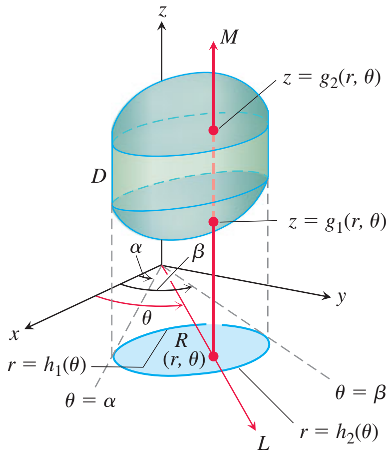
1. *Sketch.* Sketch the region D along with its projection R on the xy-plane. Label the surfaces and curves that bound D and R.



2. *Find the z-limits of integration.* Draw a line M through a typical point (r, θ) of R parallel to the z-axis. As z increases, M enters D at $z = g_1(r, \theta)$ and leaves at $z = g_2(r, \theta)$. These are the z-limits of integration.



3. *Find the r-limits of integration.* Draw a ray L through (r, θ) from the origin. The ray enters R at $r = h_1(\theta)$ and leaves at $r = h_2(\theta)$. These are the r-limits of integration.



4. *Find the θ-limits of integration.* As L sweeps across R, the angle θ it makes with the positive x-axis runs from $\theta = \alpha$ to $\theta = \beta$. These are the θ-limits of integration. The integral is

$$\iiint_D f(r, \theta, z)\, dV = \int_{\theta=\alpha}^{\theta=\beta} \int_{r=h_1(\theta)}^{r=h_2(\theta)} \int_{z=g_1(r,\theta)}^{z=g_2(r,\theta)} f(r, \theta, z)\, dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta.$$

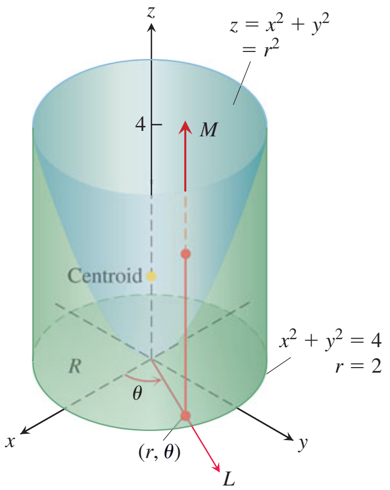


FIGURE 15.47 Example 2 shows how to find the centroid of this solid.

EXAMPLE 2 Find the centroid ($\delta = 1$) of the solid enclosed by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, bounded above by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$, and bounded below by the xy-plane.

Solution We sketch the solid, bounded above by the paraboloid $z = r^2$ and below by the plane $z = 0$ (Figure 15.47). Its base R is the disk $0 \leq r \leq 2$ in the xy-plane.

The solid's centroid $(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z})$ lies on its axis of symmetry, here the z-axis. This makes $\bar{x} = \bar{y} = 0$. To find $\bar{z}$, we divide the first moment M_{xy} by the mass M.

To find the limits of integration for the mass and moment integrals, we continue with the four basic steps. We completed our initial sketch. The remaining steps give the limits of integration.

The z-limits. A line M through a typical point (r, θ) in the base parallel to the z-axis enters the solid at $z = 0$ and leaves at $z = r^2$.

The r-limits. A ray L through (r, θ) from the origin enters R at $r = 0$ and leaves at $r = 2$.

The θ-limits. As L sweeps over the base like a clock hand, the angle θ it makes with the positive x-axis runs from $\theta = 0$ to $\theta = 2\pi$. The value of M_{xy} is

$$\begin{aligned} M_{xy} &= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2\int_0^{r^2} z\, dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2 \left[\frac{z^2}{2}\right]_0^{r^2} r\, dr\, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2 \frac{r^5}{2} dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\left[\frac{r^6}{12}\right]_0^2 d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\frac{16}{3} d\theta = \frac{32\pi}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

The value of M is

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2\int_0^{r^2} dz\, r\, dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2 \left[z\right]_0^{r^2} r\, dr\, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^2 r^3\, dr\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\left[\frac{r^4}{4}\right]_0^2 d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} 4\, d\theta = 8\pi. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\bar{z} = \frac{M_{xy}}{M} = \frac{32\pi}{3}\frac{1}{8\pi} = \frac{4}{3},$$

and the centroid is $(0, 0, 4/3)$. Notice that the centroid lies on the z-axis, outside the solid. ■

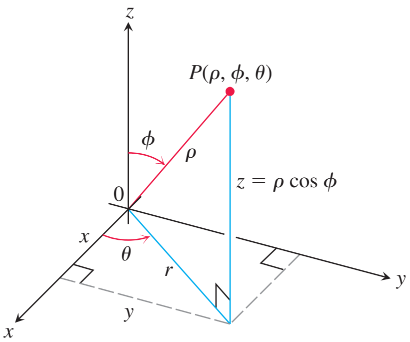


FIGURE 15.48 The spherical coordinates ρ, ϕ, and θ and their relation to x, y, z, and r.

Spherical Coordinates and Integration

Spherical coordinates locate points in space with two angles and one distance, as shown in Figure 15.48. The first coordinate, $\rho = |\overrightarrow{OP}|$, is the point's distance from the origin and is never negative. The second coordinate, ϕ, is the angle $\overrightarrow{OP}$ makes with the positive z-axis. It is required to lie in the interval $[0, \pi]$. The third coordinate is the angle θ as measured in cylindrical coordinates.

> **DEFINITION** **Spherical coordinates** represent a point P in space by ordered triples (ρ, ϕ, θ) in which
>
> 1. ρ is the distance from P to the origin $(\rho \geq 0)$.
> 2. ϕ is the angle $\overrightarrow{OP}$ makes with the positive z-axis $(0 \leq \phi \leq \pi)$.
> 3. θ is the angle from cylindrical coordinates.

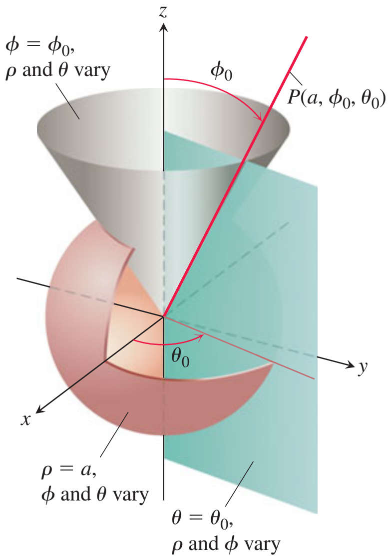


FIGURE 15.49 Constant-coordinate equations in spherical coordinates yield spheres, single cones, and half-planes.

On maps of the earth, θ is related to the meridian of a point on the earth and ϕ to its latitude, while ρ is related to elevation above the earth's surface.

The equation $\rho = a$ describes the sphere of radius a centered at the origin (Figure 15.49). The equation $\phi = \phi_0$ describes a single cone whose vertex lies at the origin and whose axis lies along the z-axis. (We broaden our interpretation to include the xy-plane as the cone $\phi = \pi/2$.) If ϕ_0 is greater than $\pi/2$, the cone $\phi = \phi_0$ opens downward. The equation $\theta = \theta_0$ describes the half-plane that contains the z-axis and makes an angle θ_0 with the positive x-axis.

Equations Relating Spherical Coordinates to Cartesian and Cylindrical Coordinates

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \rho \sin \phi, & x &= r \cos \theta = \rho \sin \phi \cos \theta, \\ z &= \rho \cos \phi, & y &= r \sin \theta = \rho \sin \phi \sin \theta, \\ \rho &= \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} = \sqrt{r^2 + z^2}. \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

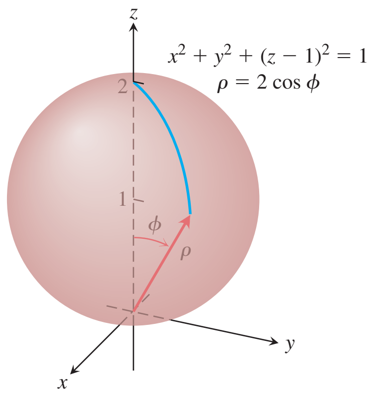


FIGURE 15.50 The sphere in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3 Find a spherical coordinate equation for the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + (z - 1)^2 = 1$.

Solution We use Equations (1) to substitute for x, y, and z:

$$x^2 + y^2 + (z - 1)^2 = 1$$

$$\rho^2 \sin^2 \phi \cos^2 \theta + \rho^2 \sin^2 \phi \sin^2 \theta + (\rho \cos \phi - 1)^2 = 1 \qquad \text{Eqs. (1)}$$

$$\rho^2 \sin^2 \phi \underbrace{(\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta)}_{1} + \rho^2 \cos^2 \phi - 2\rho \cos \phi + 1 = 1$$

$$\rho^2 \underbrace{(\sin^2 \phi + \cos^2 \phi)}_{1} = 2\rho \cos \phi$$

$$\rho^2 = 2\rho \cos \phi$$

$$\rho = 2 \cos \phi. \qquad \rho > 0$$

The angle ϕ varies from 0 at the north pole of the sphere to $\pi/2$ at the south pole; the angle θ does not appear in the expression for ρ, reflecting the symmetry about the z-axis (see Figure 15.50). ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find a spherical coordinate equation for the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

Solution 1 *Use geometry*. The cone is symmetric with respect to the z-axis and cuts the first quadrant of the yz-plane along the line $z = y$. The angle between the cone and the positive z-axis is therefore $\pi/4$ radians. The cone consists of the points whose spherical coordinates have ϕ equal to $\pi/4$, so its equation is $\phi = \pi/4$. (See Figure 15.51.)

Solution 2 *Use algebra*. If we use Equations (1) to substitute for x, y, and z we obtain the same result:

$$z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$\rho \cos \phi = \sqrt{\rho^2 \sin^2 \phi} \qquad \text{Example 3}$$

$$\rho \cos \phi = \rho \sin \phi \qquad \rho > 0, \sin \phi \ge 0$$

$$\cos \phi = \sin \phi$$

$$\phi = \frac{\pi}{4}. \qquad 0 \le \phi \le \pi$$ ■

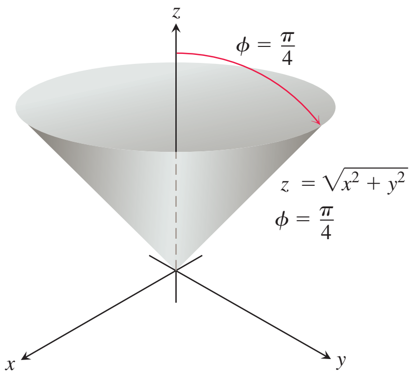


FIGURE 15.51 The cone in Example 4.

Spherical coordinates are useful for describing spheres centered at the origin, half-planes hinged along the z-axis, and cones whose vertices lie at the origin and whose axes lie along the z-axis. Surfaces like these have equations of constant coordinate value:

$$\rho = 4 \qquad \text{Sphere, radius 4, center at origin}$$

$$\phi = \frac{\pi}{3} \qquad \text{Cone opening up from the origin, making an angle of } \pi/3 \text{ radians with the positive z-axis}$$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}. \qquad \text{Half-plane, hinged along the z-axis, making an angle of } \pi/3 \text{ radians with the positive x-axis}$$

When computing triple integrals over a region D in spherical coordinates, we partition the region into n spherical wedges. The size of the kth spherical wedge, which contains a

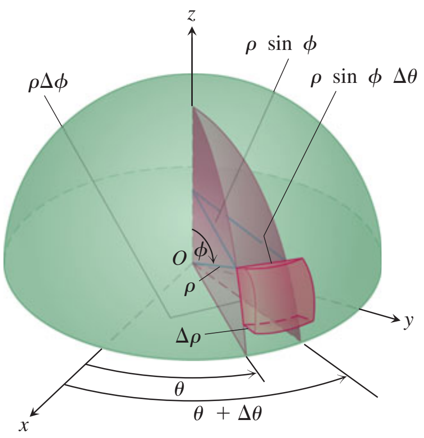


FIGURE 15.52 In spherical coordinates we use the volume of a spherical wedge, which closely approximates that of a cube.

point $(\rho_k, \phi_k, \theta_k)$, is given by the changes $\Delta\rho_k$, $\Delta\phi_k$, and $\Delta\theta_k$ in ρ, ϕ, and θ. Such a spherical wedge has one edge a circular arc of length $\rho_k\,\Delta\phi_k$, another edge a circular arc of length $\rho_k \sin\phi_k\,\Delta\theta_k$, and thickness $\Delta\rho_k$. The spherical wedge closely approximates a cube of these dimensions when $\Delta\rho_k$, $\Delta\phi_k$, and $\Delta\theta_k$ are all small (Figure 15.52). It can be shown that the volume of this spherical wedge ΔV_k is $\Delta V_k = {\rho_k}^2 \sin\phi_k\,\Delta\rho_k\,\Delta\phi_k\,\Delta\theta_k$ for $(\rho_k, \phi_k, \theta_k)$, a point chosen inside the wedge.

The corresponding Riemann sum for a function $f(\rho, \phi, \theta)$ is

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(\rho_k, \phi_k, \theta_k)\,{\rho_k}^2 \sin\phi_k\,\Delta\rho_k\,\Delta\phi_k\,\Delta\theta_k.$$

As the norm of a partition approaches zero, and the spherical wedges get smaller, the Riemann sums have a limit when f is continuous:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} S_n = \iiint_D f(\rho, \phi, \theta)\,dV = \iiint_D f(\rho, \phi, \theta)\,\rho^2 \sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta.$$

Volume Differential in Spherical Coordinates

$$dV = \rho^2 \sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$$

To evaluate integrals in spherical coordinates, we usually integrate first with respect to ρ. The procedure for finding the limits of integration is as follows. We restrict our attention to integrating over domains that are solids of revolution about the z-axis (or portions thereof) and for which the limits for θ and ϕ are constant. As with cylindrical coordinates, we restrict θ in the form $\alpha \le \theta \le \beta$ and $0 \le \beta - \alpha \le 2\pi$.

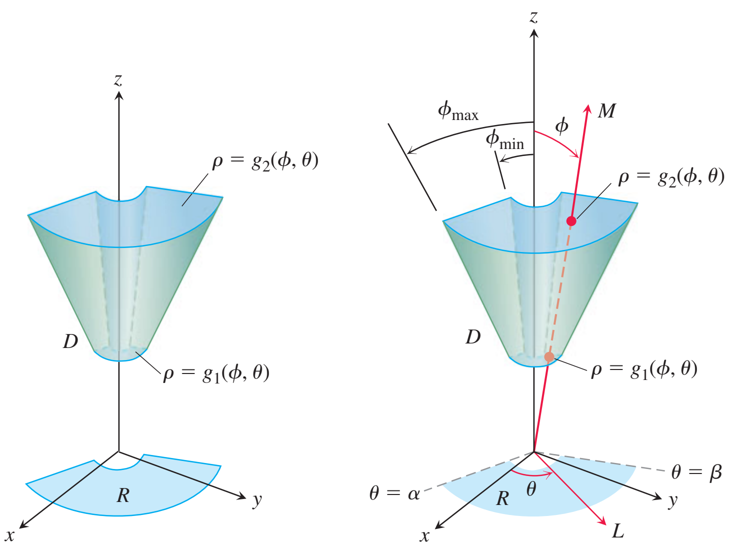
How to Integrate in Spherical Coordinates

To evaluate

$$\iiint_D f(\rho, \phi, \theta)\,dV$$

over a region D in space in spherical coordinates, integrating first with respect to ρ, then with respect to ϕ, and finally with respect to θ, take the following steps.

1. *Sketch.* Sketch the region D along with its projection R on the xy-plane. Label the surfaces that bound D.



2. *Find the ρ-limits of integration*. Draw a ray M from the origin through D, making an angle ϕ with the positive z-axis. Also draw the projection of M on the xy-plane (call the projection L). The ray L makes an angle θ with the positive x-axis. As ρ increases, M enters D at $\rho = g_1(\phi, \theta)$ and leaves at $\rho = g_2(\phi, \theta)$. These are the ρ-limits of integration shown in the above figure.
3. *Find the ϕ-limits of integration*. For any given θ, the angle ϕ that M makes with the z-axis runs from $\phi = \phi_{\min}$ to $\phi = \phi_{\max}$. These are the ϕ-limits of integration.
4. *Find the θ-limits of integration*. The ray L sweeps over R as θ runs from α to β. These are the θ-limits of integration. The integral is

$$\iiint_D f(\rho, \phi, \theta)\, dV = \int_{\theta=\alpha}^{\theta=\beta} \int_{\phi=\phi_{\min}}^{\phi=\phi_{\max}} \int_{\rho=g_1(\phi, \theta)}^{\rho=g_2(\phi, \theta)} f(\rho, \phi, \theta)\, \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta.$$

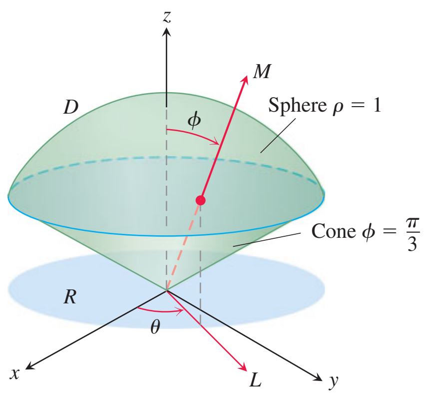


FIGURE 15.53 The ice cream cone in Example 5.

EXAMPLE 5 Find the volume of the "ice cream cone" D cut from the solid sphere $\rho \le 1$ by the cone $\phi = \pi/3$.

Solution The volume is $V = \iiint_D \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta$, the integral of $f(\rho, \phi, \theta) = 1$ over D.

To find the limits of integration for evaluating the integral, we begin by sketching D and its projection R on the xy-plane (Figure 15.53).

The ρ-limits of integration. We draw a ray M from the origin through D, making an angle ϕ with the positive z-axis. We also draw L, the projection of M on the xy-plane, along with the angle θ that L makes with the positive x-axis. Ray M enters D at $\rho = 0$ and leaves at $\rho = 1$.

The ϕ-limits of integration. The cone $\phi = \pi/3$ makes an angle of $\pi/3$ with the positive z-axis. For any given θ, the angle ϕ can run from $\phi = 0$ to $\phi = \pi/3$.

The θ-limits of integration. The ray L sweeps over R as θ runs from 0 to 2π. The volume is

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \iiint_D \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/3} \int_0^1 \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/3} \left[\frac{\rho^3}{3}\right]_0^1 \sin\phi\, d\phi\, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/3} \frac{1}{3} \sin\phi\, d\phi\, d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} \left[-\frac{1}{3}\cos\phi\right]_0^{\pi/3} d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \left(-\frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{3}\right) d\theta = \frac{1}{6}(2\pi) = \frac{\pi}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

■

EXAMPLE 6 A solid of constant density $\delta = 1$ occupies the region D in Example 5. Find the solid's moment of inertia about the z-axis.

Solution In rectangular coordinates, the moment is

$$I_z = \iiint_D (x^2 + y^2)\, dV.$$

In spherical coordinates, $x^2 + y^2 = (\rho \sin\phi \cos\theta)^2 + (\rho \sin\phi \sin\theta)^2 = \rho^2 \sin^2\phi$. Hence,

$$I_z = \iiint_D (\rho^2 \sin^2\phi)\, \rho^2 \sin\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta = \iiint_D \rho^4 \sin^3\phi\, d\rho\, d\phi\, d\theta.$$

For the region D in Example 5, this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} I_z &= \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/3}\int_0^1 \rho^4 \sin^3\phi \, d\rho \, d\phi \, d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/3}\left[\frac{\rho^5}{5}\right]_0^1 \sin^3\phi \, d\phi \, d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{5}\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/3}(1-\cos^2\phi)\sin\phi \, d\phi \, d\theta = \frac{1}{5}\int_0^{2\pi}\left[-\cos\phi + \frac{\cos^3\phi}{3}\right]_0^{\pi/3} d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{5}\int_0^{2\pi}\left(-\frac{1}{2}+1+\frac{1}{24}-\frac{1}{3}\right)d\theta = \frac{1}{5}\int_0^{2\pi}\frac{5}{24}d\theta = \frac{1}{24}(2\pi) = \frac{\pi}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

Coordinate Conversion Formulas

Cylindrical to Rectangular	Spherical to Rectangular	Spherical to Cylindrical
$x = r\cos\theta$	$x = \rho\sin\phi\cos\theta$	$r = \rho\sin\phi$
$y = r\sin\theta$	$y = \rho\sin\phi\sin\theta$	$z = \rho\cos\phi$
$z = z$	$z = \rho\cos\phi$	$\theta = \theta$

Corresponding formulas for dV in triple integrals:

$$\begin{aligned} dV &= dx\,dy\,dz \\ &= dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta \\ &= \rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta \end{aligned}$$

In the next section we offer a more general procedure for determining dV in cylindrical and spherical coordinates. The results, of course, will be the same.

Exercises 15.7

Evaluating Integrals in Cylindrical Coordinates

Evaluate the cylindrical coordinate integrals in Exercises 1–6.

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^1\int_r^{\sqrt{2-r^2}} dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

2. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3\int_{r^2/3}^{\sqrt{18-r^2}} dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

3. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\theta/2\pi}\int_0^{3+24r^2} dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

4. $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\theta/\pi}\int_{-\sqrt{4-r^2}}^{3\sqrt{4-r^2}} z\,dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

5. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^1\int_r^{1/\sqrt{2-r^2}} 3\,dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

6. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^1\int_{-1/2}^{1/2}(r^2\sin^2\theta + z^2)\,dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$

Changing the Order of Integration in Cylindrical Coordinates

The integrals we have seen so far suggest that there are preferred orders of integration for cylindrical coordinates, but other orders usually work well and are occasionally easier to evaluate. Evaluate the integrals in Exercises 7–10.

7. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^3\int_0^{z/3} r^3\,dr\,dz\,d\theta$

8. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^1\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{1+\cos\theta} 4r\,dr\,d\theta\,dz$

9. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{\sqrt{z}}\int_0^{2\pi}(r^2\cos^2\theta + z^2)\,r\,d\theta\,dr\,dz$

10. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{r-2}^{\sqrt{4-r^2}}\int_0^{2\pi}(r\sin\theta + 1)\,r\,d\theta\,dz\,dr$

11. Let D be the region bounded below by the plane $z = 0$, above by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$. Set up the triple integrals in cylindrical coordinates that give the volume of D using the following orders of integration.
   a. $dz\,dr\,d\theta$ **b.** $dr\,dz\,d\theta$ **c.** $d\theta\,dz\,dr$

12. Let D be the region bounded below by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and above by the paraboloid $z = 2 - x^2 - y^2$. Set up the triple integrals in cylindrical coordinates that give the volume of D using the following orders of integration.
   a. $dz\,dr\,d\theta$ **b.** $dr\,dz\,d\theta$ **c.** $d\theta\,dz\,dr$

Finding Iterated Integrals in Cylindrical Coordinates

13. Give the limits of integration for evaluating the integral

$$\iiint f(r, \theta, z)\,dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$$

as an iterated integral over the region that is bounded below by the plane $z = 0$, on the side by the cylinder $r = \cos\theta$, and on top by the paraboloid $z = 3r^2$.

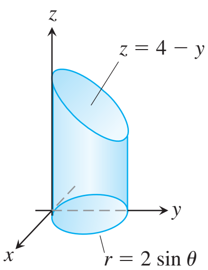
14. Convert the integral

$$\int_{-1}^{1}\int_{0}^{\sqrt{1-y^2}}\int_{0}^{x}(x^2 + y^2)\,dz\,dx\,dy$$

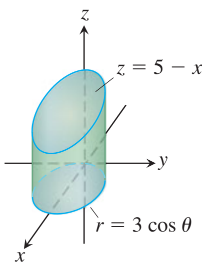
to an equivalent integral in cylindrical coordinates and evaluate the result.

In Exercises 15–20, set up the iterated integral for evaluating $\iiint_D f(r, \theta, z)\,dz\,r\,dr\,d\theta$ over the given region D.

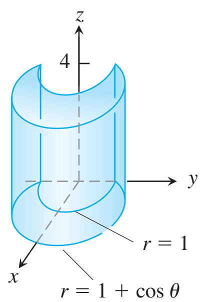
15. D is the right circular cylinder whose base is the circle $r = 2\sin\theta$ in the xy-plane and whose top lies in the plane $z = 4 - y$.



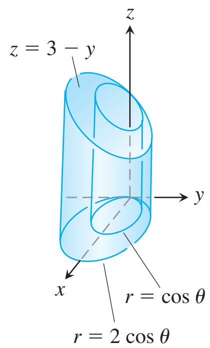
16. D is the right circular cylinder whose base is the circle $r = 3\cos\theta$ and whose top lies in the plane $z = 5 - x$.



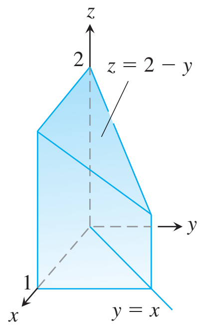
17. D is the solid right cylinder whose base is the region in the xy-plane that lies inside the cardioid $r = 1 + \cos\theta$ and outside the circle $r = 1$ and whose top lies in the plane $z = 4$.



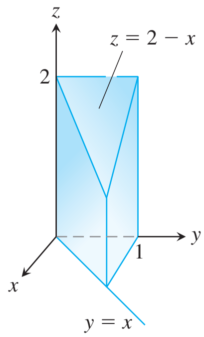
18. D is the solid right cylinder whose base is the region between the circles $r = \cos\theta$ and $r = 2\cos\theta$ and whose top lies in the plane $z = 3 - y$.



19. D is the prism whose base is the triangle in the xy-plane bounded by the x-axis and the lines $y = x$ and $x = 1$ and whose top lies in the plane $z = 2 - y$.



20. D is the prism whose base is the triangle in the xy-plane bounded by the y-axis and the lines $y = x$ and $y = 1$ and whose top lies in the plane $z = 2 - x$.



Evaluating Integrals in Spherical Coordinates

Evaluate the spherical coordinate integrals in Exercises 21–26.

21. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\pi}\int_{0}^{\pi}\int_{0}^{2\sin\phi}\rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

22. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2\pi}\int_{0}^{\pi/4}\int_{0}^{2}(\rho\cos\phi)\,\rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

23. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2\pi}\int_{0}^{\pi}\int_{0}^{(1-\cos\phi)/2}\rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

24. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{3\pi/2}\int_{0}^{\pi}\int_{0}^{1}5\rho^3\sin^3\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

25. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2\pi}\int_{0}^{\pi/3}\int_{\sec\phi}^{2}3\rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

26. $\displaystyle\int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{\pi/4}\int_0^{\sec\phi} (\rho\cos\phi)\,\rho^2\sin\phi\,d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$

Changing the Order of Integration in Spherical Coordinates

The previous integrals suggest there are preferred orders of integration for spherical coordinates, but other orders give the same value and are occasionally easier to evaluate. Evaluate the integrals in Exercises 27–30.

27. $\displaystyle\int_0^2\int_{-\pi}^0\int_{\pi/4}^{\pi/2} \rho^3\sin 2\phi\,d\phi\,d\theta\,d\rho$

28. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3}\int_{\csc\phi}^{2\csc\phi}\int_0^{2\pi} \rho^2\sin\phi\,d\theta\,d\rho\,d\phi$

29. $\displaystyle\int_0^1\int_0^{\pi}\int_0^{\pi/4} 12\rho\sin^3\phi\,d\phi\,d\theta\,d\rho$

30. $\displaystyle\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/2}\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2}\int_{\csc\phi}^{2} 5\rho^4\sin^3\phi\,d\rho\,d\theta\,d\phi$

31. Let D be the region in Exercise 11. Set up the triple integrals in spherical coordinates that give the volume of D using the following orders of integration.

a. $d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$ **b.** $d\phi\,d\rho\,d\theta$

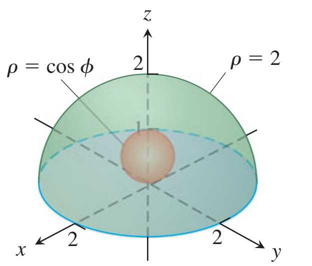
32. Let D be the region bounded below by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and above by the plane $z = 1$. Set up the triple integrals in spherical coordinates that give the volume of D using the following orders of integration.

a. $d\rho\,d\phi\,d\theta$ **b.** $d\phi\,d\rho\,d\theta$

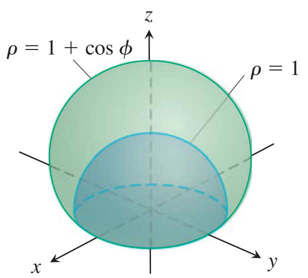
Finding Iterated Integrals in Spherical Coordinates

In Exercises 33–38, **(a)** find the spherical coordinate limits for the integral that calculates the volume of the given solid and then **(b)** evaluate the integral.

33. The solid between the sphere $\rho = \cos\phi$ and the hemisphere $\rho = 2, z \ge 0$



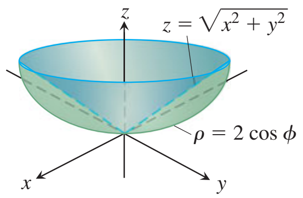
34. The solid bounded below by the hemisphere $\rho = 1, z \ge 0$, and above by the cardioid of revolution $\rho = 1 + \cos\phi$



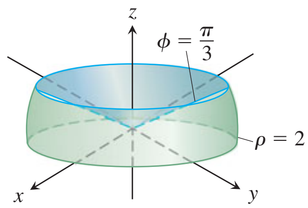
35. The solid enclosed by the cardioid of revolution $\rho = 1 - \cos\phi$

36. The upper portion cut from the solid in Exercise 35 by the xy-plane

37. The solid bounded below by the sphere $\rho = 2\cos\phi$ and above by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$



38. The solid bounded below by the xy-plane, on the sides by the sphere $\rho = 2$, and above by the cone $\phi = \pi/3$



Finding Triple Integrals

39. Set up triple integrals for the volume of the sphere $\rho = 2$ in **(a)** spherical, **(b)** cylindrical, and **(c)** rectangular coordinates.

40. Let D be the region in the first octant that is bounded below by the cone $\phi = \pi/4$ and above by the sphere $\rho = 3$. Express the volume of D as an iterated triple integral in **(a)** cylindrical and **(b)** spherical coordinates. Then **(c)** find V.

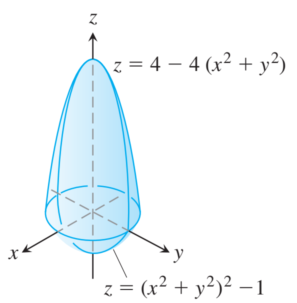
41. Let D be the smaller cap cut from a solid ball of radius 2 units by a plane 1 unit from the center of the sphere. Express the volume of D as an iterated triple integral in **(a)** spherical, **(b)** cylindrical, and **(c)** rectangular coordinates. Then **(d)** find the volume by evaluating one of the three triple integrals.

42. Express the moment of inertia I_z of the solid hemisphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 1, z \ge 0$, as an iterated integral in **(a)** cylindrical and **(b)** spherical coordinates. Then **(c)** find I_z.

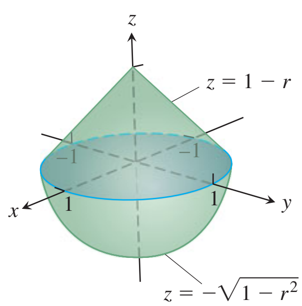
Volumes

Find the volumes of the solids in Exercises 43–48.

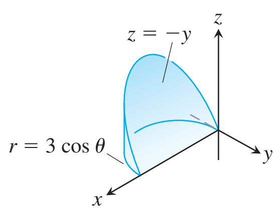
43.



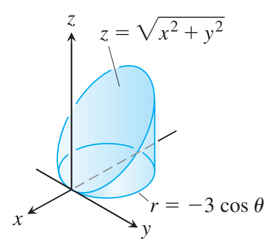
44.



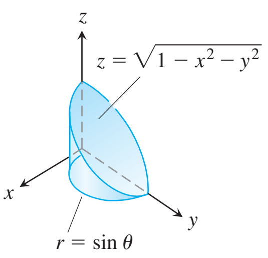
45.



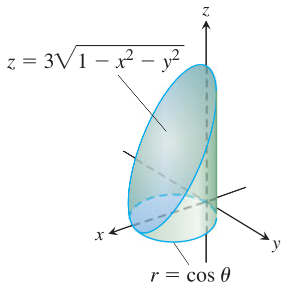
46.



47.



48.



49. Sphere and cones Find the volume of the portion of the solid sphere $\rho \le a$ that lies between the cones $\phi = \pi/3$ and $\phi = 2\pi/3$.

50. Sphere and half-planes Find the volume of the region cut from the solid sphere $\rho \le a$ by the half-planes $\theta = 0$ and $\theta = \pi/6$ in the first octant.

51. Sphere and plane Find the volume of the smaller region cut from the solid sphere $\rho \le 2$ by the plane $z = 1$.

52. Cone and planes Find the volume of the solid enclosed by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ between the planes $z = 1$ and $z = 2$.

53. Cylinder and paraboloid Find the volume of the region bounded below by the plane $z = 0$, laterally by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, and above by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$.

54. Cylinder and paraboloids Find the volume of the region bounded below by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$, laterally by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, and above by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2 + 1$.

55. Cylinder and cones Find the volume of the solid cut from the thick-walled cylinder $1 \le x^2 + y^2 \le 2$ by the cones $z = \pm\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$.

56. Sphere and cylinder Find the volume of the region that lies inside the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 2$ and outside the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

57. Cylinder and planes Find the volume of the region enclosed by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and the planes $z = 0$ and $y + z = 4$.

58. Cylinder and planes Find the volume of the region enclosed by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and the planes $z = 0$ and $x + y + z = 4$.

59. Region trapped by paraboloids Find the volume of the region bounded above by the paraboloid $z = 5 - x^2 - y^2$ and below by the paraboloid $z = 4x^2 + 4y^2$.

60. Paraboloid and cylinder Find the volume of the region bounded above by the paraboloid $z = 9 - x^2 - y^2$, below by the xy-plane, and lying *outside* the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

61. Cylinder and sphere Find the volume of the region cut from the solid cylinder $x^2 + y^2 \le 1$ by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$.

62. Sphere and paraboloid Find the volume of the region bounded above by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 2$ and below by the paraboloid $z = x^2 + y^2$.

Average Values

63. Find the average value of the function $f(r, \theta, z) = r$ over the region bounded by the cylinder $r = 1$ between the planes $z = -1$ and $z = 1$.

64. Find the average value of the function $f(r, \theta, z) = r$ over the solid ball bounded by the sphere $r^2 + z^2 = 1$. (This is the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.)

65. Find the average value of the function $f(\rho, \phi, \theta) = \rho$ over the solid ball $\rho \le 1$.

66. Find the average value of the function $f(\rho, \phi, \theta) = \rho\cos\phi$ over the solid upper ball $\rho \le 1, 0 \le \phi \le \pi/2$.

Masses, Moments, and Centroids

67. Center of mass A solid of constant density is bounded below by the plane $z = 0$, above by the cone $z = r, r \ge 0$, and on the sides by the cylinder $r = 1$. Find the center of mass.

68. Centroid Find the centroid of the region in the first octant that is bounded above by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, below by the plane $z = 0$, and on the sides by the cylinder $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and the planes $x = 0$ and $y = 0$.

69. Centroid Find the centroid of the solid in Exercise 38.

70. Centroid Find the centroid of the solid bounded above by the sphere $\rho = a$ and below by the cone $\phi = \pi/4$.

71. Centroid Find the centroid of the region that is bounded above by the surface $z = \sqrt{r}$, on the sides by the cylinder $r = 4$, and below by the xy-plane.

72. Centroid Find the centroid of the region cut from the solid ball $r^2 + z^2 \le 1$ by the half-planes $\theta = -\pi/3, r \ge 0$, and $\theta = \pi/3, r \ge 0$.

73. Moment of inertia of solid cone Find the moment of inertia of a right circular cone of base radius 1 and height 1 about an axis through the vertex parallel to the base. (Take $\delta = 1$.)

74. Moment of inertia of solid sphere Find the moment of inertia of a solid sphere of radius a about a diameter. (Take $\delta = 1$.)

75. Moment of inertia of solid cone Find the moment of inertia of a right circular cone of base radius a and height h about its axis. (*Hint:* Place the cone with its vertex at the origin and its axis along the z-axis.)

76. Variable density A solid is bounded on the top by the paraboloid $z = r^2$, on the bottom by the plane $z = 0$, and on the sides by the cylinder $r = 1$. Find the center of mass and the moment of inertia about the z-axis if the density is

a. $\delta(r, \theta, z) = z$ **b.** $\delta(r, \theta, z) = r$.

77. Variable density A solid is bounded below by the cone $z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and above by the plane $z = 1$. Find the center of mass and the moment of inertia about the z-axis if the density is

a. $\delta(r, \theta, z) = z$ **b.** $\delta(r, \theta, z) = z^2$.

78. Variable density A solid ball is bounded by the sphere $\rho = a$. Find the moment of inertia about the z-axis if the density is

a. $\delta(\rho, \phi, \theta) = \rho^2$ **b.** $\delta(\rho, \phi, \theta) = r = \rho\sin\phi$.

79. Centroid of solid semiellipsoid Show that the centroid of the solid semiellipsoid of revolution $(r^2/a^2) + (z^2/h^2) \le 1, z \ge 0$, lies on the z-axis three-eighths of the way from the base to the top. The special case $h = a$ gives a solid hemisphere. Thus, the centroid of a solid hemisphere lies on the axis of symmetry three-eighths of the way from the base to the top.

80. Centroid of solid cone Show that the centroid of a solid right circular cone is one-fourth of the way from the base to the vertex. (In general, the centroid of a solid cone or pyramid is one-fourth of the way from the centroid of the base to the vertex.)

81. Density of center of a planet A planet is in the shape of a sphere of radius R and total mass M with spherically symmetric density distribution that increases linearly as one approaches its center.

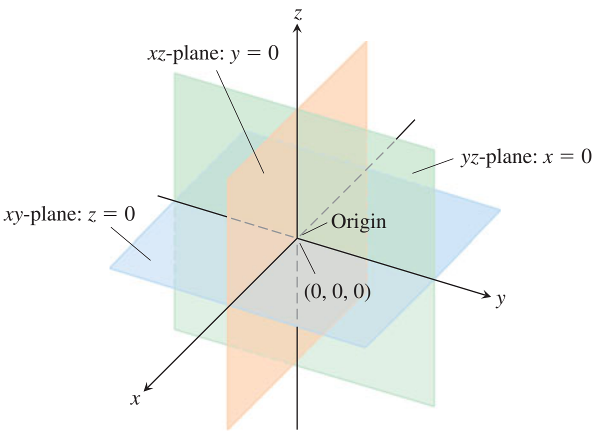


FIGURE 12.2 The planes $x = 0$, $y = 0$, and $z = 0$ divide space into eight octants.

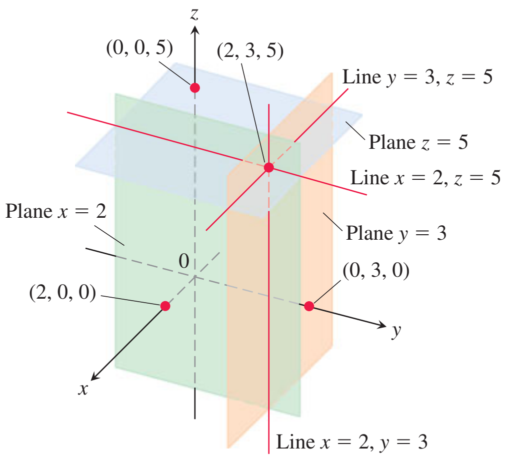


FIGURE 12.3 The planes $x = 2$, $y = 3$, and $z = 5$ determine three lines through the point $(2, 3, 5)$.

y-coordinate and the points in a plane perpendicular to the z-axis have a common z-coordinate. To write equations for these planes, we name the common coordinate's value. The plane $x = 2$ is the plane perpendicular to the x-axis at $x = 2$. The plane $y = 3$ is the plane perpendicular to the y-axis at $y = 3$. The plane $z = 5$ is the plane perpendicular to the z-axis at $z = 5$. Figure 12.3 shows the planes $x = 2$, $y = 3$, and $z = 5$, together with their intersection point $(2, 3, 5)$.

The planes $x = 2$ and $y = 3$ in Figure 12.3 intersect in a line parallel to the z-axis. This line is described by the *pair* of equations $x = 2$, $y = 3$. A point (x, y, z) lies on the line if and only if $x = 2$ and $y = 3$. Similarly, the line of intersection of the planes $y = 3$ and $z = 5$ is described by the equation pair $y = 3$, $z = 5$. This line runs parallel to the x-axis. The line of intersection of the planes $x = 2$ and $z = 5$, parallel to the y-axis, is described by the equation pair $x = 2$, $z = 5$.

In the following examples, we match coordinate equations and inequalities with the sets of points they define in space.

EXAMPLE 1 We interpret these equations and inequalities geometrically.

(a) $z \geq 0$	The half-space consisting of the points on and above the xy-plane.
(b) $x = -3$	The plane perpendicular to the x-axis at $x = -3$. This plane lies parallel to the yz-plane and 3 units behind it.
(c) $z = 0, x \leq 0, y \geq 0$	The second quadrant of the xy-plane.
(d) $x \geq 0, y \geq 0, z \geq 0$	The first octant.
(e) $-1 \leq y \leq 1$	The slab between the planes $y = -1$ and $y = 1$ (planes included).
(f) $y = -2, z = 2$	The line in which the planes $y = -2$ and $z = 2$ intersect. Alternatively, the line through the point $(0, -2, 2)$ parallel to the x-axis. ■

EXAMPLE 2 What points $P(x, y, z)$ satisfy the equations

$$x^2 + y^2 = 4 \quad \text{and} \quad z = 3?$$

Solution The points lie in the horizontal plane $z = 3$ and, in this plane, make up the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$. We call this set of points "the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ in the plane $z = 3$" or, more simply, "the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$, $z = 3$" (Figure 12.4). ■

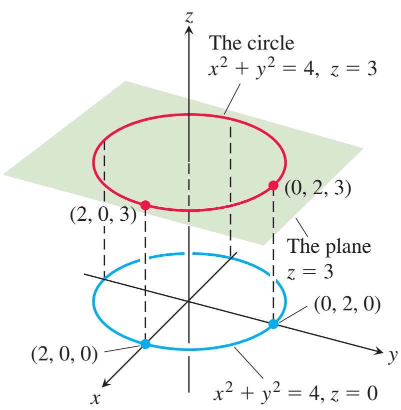


FIGURE 12.4 The circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ in the plane $z = 3$ (Example 2).

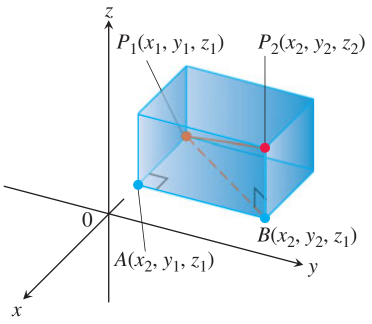


FIGURE 12.5 We find the distance between P_1 and P_2 by applying the Pythagorean theorem to the right triangles P_1AB and P_1BP_2.

Distance and Spheres in Space

The formula for the distance between two points in the *xy*-plane extends to points in space.

The Distance Between $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$

$$|P_1P_2| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

Proof We construct a rectangular box with faces parallel to the coordinate planes and the points P_1 and P_2 at opposite corners of the box (Figure 12.5). If $A(x_2, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_1)$ are the vertices of the box indicated in the figure, then the three box edges P_1A, AB, and BP_2 have lengths

$$|P_1A| = |x_2 - x_1|, \qquad |AB| = |y_2 - y_1|, \qquad |BP_2| = |z_2 - z_1|.$$

Because triangles P_1BP_2 and P_1AB are both right-angled, two applications of the Pythagorean theorem give

$$|P_1P_2|^2 = |P_1B|^2 + |BP_2|^2 \qquad \text{and} \qquad |P_1B|^2 = |P_1A|^2 + |AB|^2$$

(see Figure 12.5). So

$$\begin{aligned} |P_1P_2|^2 &= |P_1B|^2 + |BP_2|^2 \\ &= |P_1A|^2 + |AB|^2 + |BP_2|^2 && \text{Substitute } |P_1B|^2 = |P_1A|^2 + |AB|^2. \\ &= |x_2 - x_1|^2 + |y_2 - y_1|^2 + |z_2 - z_1|^2 \\ &= (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$|P_1P_2| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}. \qquad \blacksquare$$

EXAMPLE 3 The distance between $P_1(2, 1, 5)$ and $P_2(-2, 3, 0)$ is

$$\begin{aligned} |P_1P_2| &= \sqrt{(-2 - 2)^2 + (3 - 1)^2 + (0 - 5)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{16 + 4 + 25} \\ &= \sqrt{45} \approx 6.708. \end{aligned} \qquad \blacksquare$$

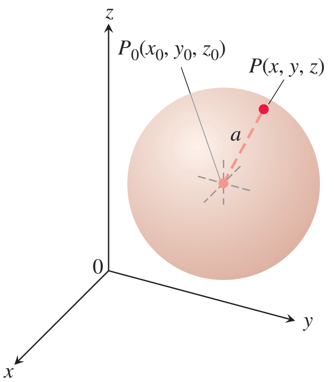


FIGURE 12.6 The sphere of radius a centered at the point (x_0, y_0, z_0).

We can use the distance formula to write equations for spheres in space (Figure 12.6). A point $P(x, y, z)$ lies on the sphere of radius a centered at $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ precisely when $|P_0P| = a$ or

$$(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + (z - z_0)^2 = a^2.$$

The Standard Equation for the Sphere of Radius a and Center (x_0, y_0, z_0)

$$(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + (z - z_0)^2 = a^2$$

EXAMPLE 4 Find the center and radius of the sphere

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 3x - 4z + 1 = 0.$$

Solution We find the center and radius of a sphere the way we find the center and radius of a circle: Complete the squares on the x-, y-, and z-terms as necessary and write each quadratic as a squared linear expression. Then, from the equation in standard form, read off the center and radius. For the sphere here, we have

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 3x - 4z + 1 = 0$$
$$(x^2 + 3x) + y^2 + (z^2 - 4z) = -1$$
$$\left(x^2 + 3x + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2\right) + y^2 + \left(z^2 - 4z + \left(\frac{-4}{2}\right)^2\right) = -1 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{-4}{2}\right)^2$$
$$\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + y^2 + (z - 2)^2 = -1 + \frac{9}{4} + 4 = \frac{21}{4}.$$

From this standard form, we read that $x_0 = -3/2$, $y_0 = 0$, $z_0 = 2$, and $a = \sqrt{21}/2$. The center is $(-3/2, 0, 2)$. The radius is $\sqrt{21}/2$. ■

EXAMPLE 5 Here are some geometric interpretations of inequalities and equations involving spheres.

(a) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < 4$	The interior of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$.
(b) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 4$	The solid ball bounded by the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$. Alternatively, the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ together with its interior.
(c) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 > 4$	The exterior of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$.
(d) $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4, z \le 0$	The lower hemisphere cut from the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4$ by the xy-plane (the plane $z = 0$). ■

Just as polar coordinates give another way to locate points in the xy-plane (Section 11.3), alternative coordinate systems, different from the Cartesian coordinate system developed here, exist for three-dimensional space. We examine two of these coordinate systems in Section 15.7.

Exercises 12.1

Geometric Interpretations of Equations

In Exercises 1–16, give a geometric description of the set of points in space whose coordinates satisfy the given pairs of equations.

1. $x = 2, \quad y = 3$

2. $x = -1, \quad z = 0$

3. $y = 0, \quad z = 0$

4. $x = 1, \quad y = 0$

5. $x^2 + y^2 = 4, \quad z = 0$

6. $x^2 + y^2 = 4, \quad z = -2$

7. $x^2 + z^2 = 4, \quad y = 0$

8. $y^2 + z^2 = 1, \quad x = 0$

9. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1, \quad x = 0$

10. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 25, \quad y = -4$

11. $x^2 + y^2 + (z + 3)^2 = 25, \quad z = 0$

12. $x^2 + (y - 1)^2 + z^2 = 4, \quad y = 0$

13. $x^2 + y^2 = 4, \quad z = y$

14. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 4, \quad y = x$

15. $y = x^2, \quad z = 0$

16. $z = y^2, \quad x = 1$

Geometric Interpretations of Inequalities and Equations

In Exercises 17–24, describe the sets of points in space whose coordinates satisfy the given inequalities or combinations of equations and inequalities.

17. a. $x \ge 0, \quad y \ge 0, \quad z = 0$ **b.** $x \ge 0, \quad y \le 0, \quad z = 0$

18. a. $0 \le x \le 1$ **b.** $0 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le 1$

c. $0 \le x \le 1, \quad 0 \le y \le 1, \quad 0 \le z \le 1$

19. a. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 1$ **b.** $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 > 1$

20. a. $x^2 + y^2 \le 1, \quad z = 0$ **b.** $x^2 + y^2 \le 1, \quad z = 3$

c. $x^2 + y^2 \le 1$, no restriction on z

21. a. $1 \le x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 4$

b. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \le 1, \quad z \ge 0$

22. a. $x = y, \quad z = 0$ **b.** $x = y$, no restriction on z

23. a. $y \ge x^2, \quad z \ge 0$ **b.** $x \le y^2, \quad 0 \le z \le 2$

24. a. $z = 1 - y$, no restriction on x

b. $z = y^3, \quad x = 2$

In Exercises 25–34, describe the given set with a single equation or with a pair of equations.

25. The plane perpendicular to the

a. x-axis at (3, 0, 0) **b.** y-axis at $(0, -1, 0)$

c. z-axis at $(0, 0, -2)$

26. The plane through the point $(3, -1, 2)$ perpendicular to the

a. x-axis **b.** y-axis **c.** z-axis

27. The plane through the point $(3, -1, 1)$ parallel to the

a. xy-plane **b.** yz-plane **c.** xz-plane

28. The circle of radius 2 centered at (0, 0, 0) and lying in the

a. xy-plane **b.** yz-plane **c.** xz-plane

29. The circle of radius 2 centered at (0, 2, 0) and lying in the

a. xy-plane **b.** yz-plane **c.** plane $y = 2$

30. The circle of radius 1 centered at $(-3, 4, 1)$ and lying in a plane parallel to the

a. xy-plane **b.** yz-plane **c.** xz-plane

31. The line through the point $(1, 3, -1)$ parallel to the

a. x-axis **b.** y-axis **c.** z-axis

32. The set of points in space equidistant from the origin and the point (0, 2, 0)

33. The circle in which the plane through the point (1, 1, 3) perpendicular to the z-axis meets the sphere of radius 5 centered at the origin

34. The set of points in space that lie 2 units from the point (0, 0, 1) and, at the same time, 2 units from the point $(0, 0, -1)$

Inequalities to Describe Sets of Points

Write inequalities to describe the sets in Exercises 35–40.

35. The slab bounded by the planes $z = 0$ and $z = 1$ (planes included)

36. The solid cube in the first octant bounded by the coordinate planes and the planes $x = 2$, $y = 2$, and $z = 2$

37. The half-space consisting of the points on and below the xy-plane

38. The upper hemisphere of the sphere of radius 1 centered at the origin

39. The **(a)** interior and **(b)** exterior of the sphere of radius 1 centered at the point (1, 1, 1)

40. The closed region bounded by the spheres of radius 1 and radius 2 centered at the origin. (*Closed* means the spheres are to be included. Had we wanted the spheres left out, we would have asked for the *open* region bounded by the spheres. This is analogous to the way we use *closed* and *open* to describe intervals: *closed* means endpoints included, *open* means endpoints left out. Closed sets include boundaries; open sets leave them out.)

Distance

In Exercises 41–46, find the distance between points P_1 and P_2.

41. $P_1(1, 1, 1)$, $P_2(3, 3, 0)$

42. $P_1(-1, 1, 5)$, $P_2(2, 5, 0)$

43. $P_1(1, 4, 5)$, $P_2(4, -2, 7)$

44. $P_1(3, 4, 5)$, $P_2(2, 3, 4)$

45. $P_1(0, 0, 0)$, $P_2(2, -2, -2)$

46. $P_1(5, 3, -2)$, $P_2(0, 0, 0)$

Spheres

Find the centers and radii of the spheres in Exercises 47–50.

47. $(x + 2)^2 + y^2 + (z - 2)^2 = 8$

48. $(x - 1)^2 + \left(y + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + (z + 3)^2 = 25$

49. $\left(x - \sqrt{2}\right)^2 + \left(y - \sqrt{2}\right)^2 + \left(z + \sqrt{2}\right)^2 = 2$

50. $x^2 + \left(y + \frac{1}{3}\right)^2 + \left(z - \frac{1}{3}\right)^2 = \frac{16}{9}$

Find equations for the spheres whose centers and radii are given in Exercises 51–54.

	Center	Radius
51.	(1, 2, 3)	$\sqrt{14}$
52.	$(0, -1, 5)$	2
53.	$\left(-1, \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{2}{3}\right)$	$\frac{4}{9}$
54.	$(0, -7, 0)$	7

Find the centers and radii of the spheres in Exercises 55–58.

55. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 4x - 4z = 0$

56. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 6y + 8z = 0$

57. $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2z^2 + x + y + z = 9$

58. $3x^2 + 3y^2 + 3z^2 + 2y - 2z = 9$

Theory and Examples

59. Find a formula for the distance from the point $P(x, y, z)$ to the

a. x-axis. **b.** y-axis. **c.** z-axis.

60. Find a formula for the distance from the point $P(x, y, z)$ to the

a. xy-plane. **b.** yz-plane. **c.** xz-plane.

61. Find the perimeter of the triangle with vertices $A(-1, 2, 1)$, $B(1, -1, 3)$, and $C(3, 4, 5)$.

62. Show that the point $P(3, 1, 2)$ is equidistant from the points $A(2, -1, 3)$ and $B(4, 3, 1)$.

63. Find an equation for the set of all points equidistant from the planes $y = 3$ and $y = -1$.

64. Find an equation for the set of all points equidistant from the point (0, 0, 2) and the xy-plane.

65. Find the point on the sphere $x^2 + (y - 3)^2 + (z + 5)^2 = 4$ nearest

a. the xy-plane. **b.** the point $(0, 7, -5)$.

66. Find the point equidistant from the points (0, 0, 0), (0, 4, 0), (3, 0, 0), and $(2, 2, -3)$.

12.2 Vectors

Some of the things we measure are determined simply by their magnitudes. To record mass, length, or time, for example, we need only write down a number and name an appropriate unit of measure. We need more information to describe a force, displacement, or velocity. To describe a force, we need to record the direction in which it acts as well as how large it is. To describe a body's displacement, we have to say in what direction it moved as well as how far. To describe a body's velocity, we have to know where the body is headed as well as how fast it is going. In this section we show how to represent things that have both magnitude and direction in the plane or in space.

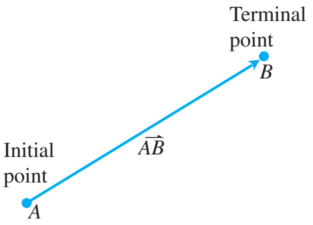


FIGURE 12.7 The directed line segment $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is called a vector.

Component Form

A quantity such as force, displacement, or velocity is called a **vector** and is represented by a **directed line segment** (Figure 12.7). The arrow points in the direction of the action and its length gives the magnitude of the action in terms of a suitably chosen unit. For example, a force vector points in the direction in which the force acts and its length is a measure of the force's strength; a velocity vector points in the direction of motion and its length is the speed of the moving object. Figure 12.8 displays the velocity vector **v** at a specific location for a particle moving along a path in the plane or in space. (This application of vectors is studied in Chapter 13.)

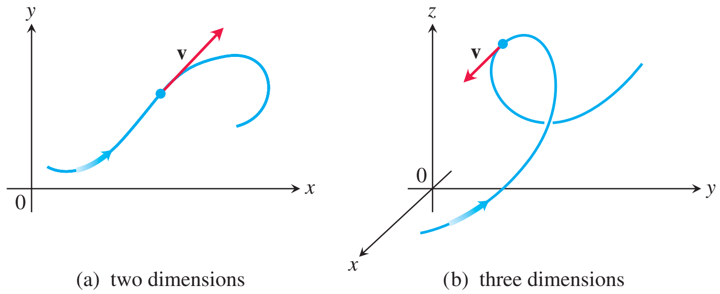


FIGURE 12.8 The velocity vector of a particle moving along a path (a) in the plane (b) in space. The arrowhead on the path indicates the direction of motion of the particle.

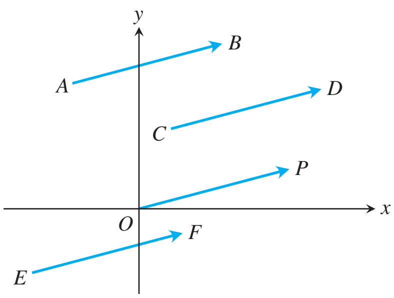


FIGURE 12.9 The four arrows in the plane (directed line segments) shown here have the same length and direction. They therefore represent the same vector, and we write $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{CD} = \overrightarrow{OP} = \overrightarrow{EF}$.

> **DEFINITIONS** The vector represented by the directed line segment $\overrightarrow{AB}$ has **initial point** A and **terminal point** B and its **length** is denoted by $|\overrightarrow{AB}|$. Two vectors are **equal** if they have the same length and direction.

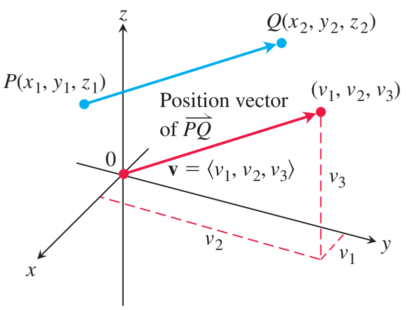


FIGURE 12.10 A vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ in standard position has its initial point at the origin. The directed line segments $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and **v** are parallel and have the same length.

The arrows we use when we draw vectors are understood to represent the same vector if they have the same length, are parallel, and point in the same direction (Figure 12.9) regardless of the initial point.

In textbooks, vectors are usually written in lowercase, boldface letters, for example **u**, **v**, and **w**. Sometimes we use uppercase boldface letters, such as **F**, to denote a force vector. In handwritten form, it is customary to draw small arrows above the letters, for example $\vec{u}$, $\vec{v}$, $\vec{w}$, and $\vec{F}$.

We need a way to represent vectors algebraically so that we can be more precise about the direction of a vector. Let $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$. There is one directed line segment equal to $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ whose initial point is the origin (Figure 12.10). It is the representative of **v** in **standard position** and is the vector we normally use to represent **v**. We can specify **v** by writing the coordinates of its terminal point (v_1, v_2, v_3) when **v** is in standard position. If **v** is a vector in the plane its terminal point (v_1, v_2) has two coordinates.

DEFINITION If **v** is a **two-dimensional** vector in the plane equal to the vector with initial point at the origin and terminal point (v_1, v_2), then the **component form** of **v** is

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle.$$

If **v** is a **three-dimensional** vector equal to the vector with initial point at the origin and terminal point (v_1, v_2, v_3), then the **component form** of **v** is

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle.$$

HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHY
Carl Friedrich Gauss
(1777–1855)

So a two-dimensional vector is an ordered pair $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle$ of real numbers, and a three-dimensional vector is an ordered triple $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ of real numbers. The numbers v_1, v_2, and v_3 are the **components** of **v**.

If $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ is represented by the directed line segment $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, where the initial point is $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and the terminal point is $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$, then $x_1 + v_1 = x_2$, $y_1 + v_2 = y_2$, and $z_1 + v_3 = z_2$ (see Figure 12.10). Thus, $v_1 = x_2 - x_1$, $v_2 = y_2 - y_1$, and $v_3 = z_2 - z_1$ are the components of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$.

In summary, given the points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$, the standard position vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ equal to $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1, z_2 - z_1 \rangle.$$

If **v** is two-dimensional with $P(x_1, y_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2)$ as points in the plane, then $\mathbf{v} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1 \rangle$. There is no third component for planar vectors. With this understanding, we will develop the algebra of three-dimensional vectors and simply drop the third component when the vector is two-dimensional (a planar vector).

Two vectors are equal if and only if their standard position vectors are identical. Thus $\langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle$ and $\langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ are **equal** if and only if $u_1 = v_1$, $u_2 = v_2$, and $u_3 = v_3$.

The **magnitude** or **length** of the vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is the length of any of its equivalent directed line segment representations. In particular, if $\mathbf{v} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1, z_2 - z_1 \rangle$ is the standard position vector for $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, then the distance formula gives the magnitude or length of **v**, denoted by the symbol $|\mathbf{v}|$ or $\|\mathbf{v}\|$.

The **magnitude** or **length** of the vector $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ is the nonnegative number

$$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{v_1^2 + v_2^2 + v_3^2} = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

(see Figure 12.10).

The only vector with length 0 is the **zero vector** $\mathbf{0} = \langle 0, 0 \rangle$ or $\mathbf{0} = \langle 0, 0, 0 \rangle$. This vector is also the only vector with no specific direction.

EXAMPLE 1 Find the **(a)** component form and **(b)** length of the vector with initial point $P(-3, 4, 1)$ and terminal point $Q(-5, 2, 2)$.

Solution

(a) The standard position vector **v** representing $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ has components

$$v_1 = x_2 - x_1 = -5 - (-3) = -2, \qquad v_2 = y_2 - y_1 = 2 - 4 = -2,$$

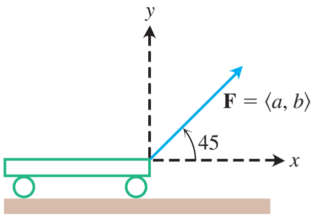


FIGURE 12.11 The force pulling the cart forward is represented by the vector **F** whose horizontal component is the effective force (Example 2).

and

$$v_3 = z_2 - z_1 = 2 - 1 = 1.$$

The component form of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, -2, 1 \rangle.$$

(b) The length or magnitude of $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ is

$$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + (-2)^2 + (1)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3.$$ ■

EXAMPLE 2 A small cart is being pulled along a smooth horizontal floor with a 20-lb force **F** making a 45° angle to the floor (Figure 12.11). What is the *effective* force moving the cart forward?

Solution The effective force is the horizontal component of $\mathbf{F} = \langle a, b \rangle$, given by

$$a = |\mathbf{F}| \cos 45° = (20)\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right) \approx 14.14 \text{ lb}.$$

Notice that **F** is a two-dimensional vector. ■

Vector Algebra Operations

Two principal operations involving vectors are *vector addition* and *scalar multiplication*. A **scalar** is simply a real number, and is called such when we want to draw attention to its differences from vectors. Scalars can be positive, negative, or zero and are used to "scale" a vector by multiplication.

DEFINITIONS Let $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ be vectors with k a scalar.

Addition: $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \langle u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, u_3 + v_3 \rangle$

Scalar multiplication: $k\mathbf{u} = \langle ku_1, ku_2, ku_3 \rangle$

We add vectors by adding the corresponding components of the vectors. We multiply a vector by a scalar by multiplying each component by the scalar. The definitions apply to planar vectors except there are only two components, $\langle u_1, u_2 \rangle$ and $\langle v_1, v_2 \rangle$.

The definition of vector addition is illustrated geometrically for planar vectors in Figure 12.12a, where the initial point of one vector is placed at the terminal point of the other. Another interpretation is shown in Figure 12.12b (called the **parallelogram law** of

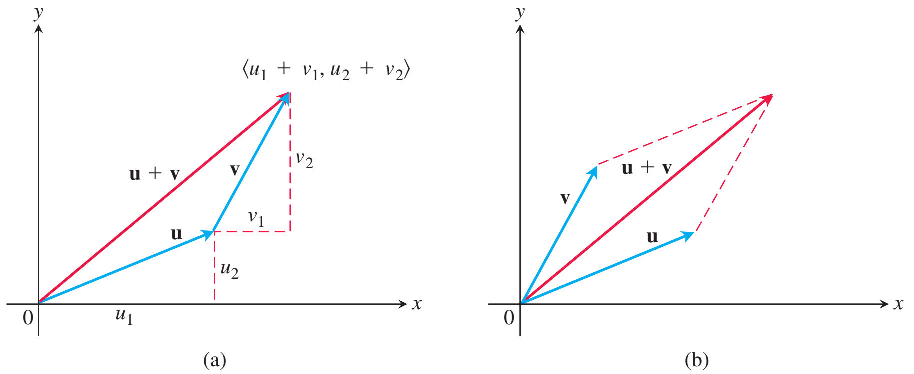


FIGURE 12.12 (a) Geometric interpretation of the vector sum. (b) The parallelogram law of vector addition in which both vectors are in standard position.

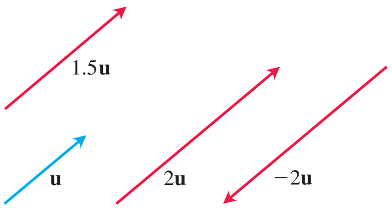


FIGURE 12.13 Scalar multiples of **u**.

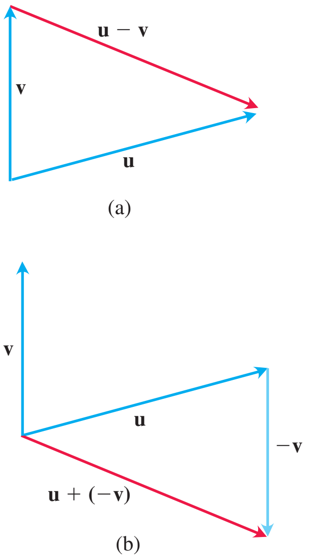


FIGURE 12.14 (a) The vector $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, when added to **v**, gives **u**. (b) $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v})$.

addition), where the sum, called the **resultant vector**, is the diagonal of the parallelogram. In physics, forces add vectorially as do velocities, accelerations, and so on. So the force acting on a particle subject to two gravitational forces, for example, is obtained by adding the two force vectors.

Figure 12.13 displays a geometric interpretation of the product $k\mathbf{u}$ of the scalar k and vector **u**. If $k > 0$, then $k\mathbf{u}$ has the same direction as **u**; if $k < 0$, then the direction of $k\mathbf{u}$ is opposite to that of **u**. Comparing the lengths of **u** and $k\mathbf{u}$, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} |k\mathbf{u}| &= \sqrt{(ku_1)^2 + (ku_2)^2 + (ku_3)^2} = \sqrt{k^2(u_1{}^2 + u_2{}^2 + u_3{}^2)} \\ &= \sqrt{k^2}\sqrt{u_1{}^2 + u_2{}^2 + u_3{}^2} = |k||\mathbf{u}|. \end{aligned}$$

The length of $k\mathbf{u}$ is the absolute value of the scalar k times the length of **u**. The vector $(-1)\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{u}$ has the same length as **u** but points in the opposite direction.

The **difference** $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ of two vectors is defined by

$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v}).$$

If $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$, then

$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \langle u_1 - v_1, u_2 - v_2, u_3 - v_3 \rangle.$$

Note that $(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u}$, so adding the vector $(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v})$ to **v** gives **u** (Figure 12.14a). Figure 12.14b shows the difference $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ as the sum $\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v})$.

EXAMPLE 3 Let $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 3, 1 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 7, 0 \rangle$. Find the components of

(a) $2\mathbf{u} + 3\mathbf{v}$ **(b)** $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ **(c)** $\left|\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{u}\right|$.

Solution

(a) $2\mathbf{u} + 3\mathbf{v} = 2\langle -1, 3, 1 \rangle + 3\langle 4, 7, 0 \rangle = \langle -2, 6, 2 \rangle + \langle 12, 21, 0 \rangle = \langle 10, 27, 2 \rangle$

(b) $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \langle -1, 3, 1 \rangle - \langle 4, 7, 0 \rangle = \langle -1 - 4, 3 - 7, 1 - 0 \rangle = \langle -5, -4, 1 \rangle$

(c) $\left|\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{u}\right| = \left|\left\langle -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2} \right\rangle\right| = \sqrt{\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{11}.$ ■

Vector operations have many of the properties of ordinary arithmetic.

Properties of Vector Operations

Let **u**, **v**, **w** be vectors and a, b be scalars.

1. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$
2. $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})$
3. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{u}$
4. $\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$
5. $0\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$
6. $1\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}$
7. $a(b\mathbf{u}) = (ab)\mathbf{u}$
8. $a(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = a\mathbf{u} + a\mathbf{v}$
9. $(a + b)\mathbf{u} = a\mathbf{u} + b\mathbf{u}$

These properties are readily verified using the definitions of vector addition and multiplication by a scalar. For instance, to establish Property 1, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} &= \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle + \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle \\ &= \langle u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, u_3 + v_3 \rangle \\ &= \langle v_1 + u_1, v_2 + u_2, v_3 + u_3 \rangle \\ &= \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle + \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle \\ &= \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}. \end{aligned}$$

When three or more space vectors lie in the same plane, we say they are **coplanar** vectors. For example, the vectors **u**, **v**, and **u** + **v** are always coplanar.

Unit Vectors

A vector **v** of length 1 is called a **unit vector**. The **standard unit vectors** are

$$\mathbf{i} = \langle 1, 0, 0 \rangle, \quad \mathbf{j} = \langle 0, 1, 0 \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{k} = \langle 0, 0, 1 \rangle.$$

Any vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ can be written as a *linear combination* of the standard unit vectors as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle &= \langle v_1, 0, 0 \rangle + \langle 0, v_2, 0 \rangle + \langle 0, 0, v_3 \rangle \\ &= v_1 \langle 1, 0, 0 \rangle + v_2 \langle 0, 1, 0 \rangle + v_3 \langle 0, 0, 1 \rangle \\ &= v_1 \mathbf{i} + v_2 \mathbf{j} + v_3 \mathbf{k}.\end{aligned}$$

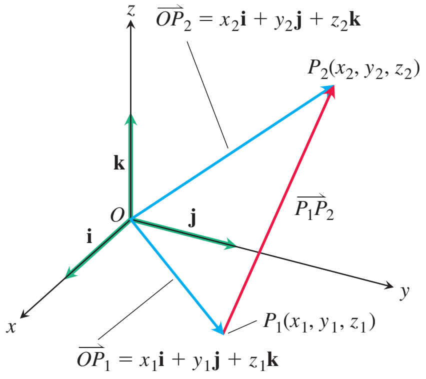


FIGURE 12.15 The vector from P_1 to P_2 is $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = (x_2 - x_1)\mathbf{i} + (y_2 - y_1)\mathbf{j} + (z_2 - z_1)\mathbf{k}$.

We call the scalar (or number) v_1 the **i-component** of the vector **v**, v_2 the **j-component**, and v_3 the **k-component**. In component form, the vector from $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = (x_2 - x_1)\mathbf{i} + (y_2 - y_1)\mathbf{j} + (z_2 - z_1)\mathbf{k}$$

(Figure 12.15).

Whenever $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$, its length $|\mathbf{v}|$ is not zero and

$$\left| \frac{1}{|\mathbf{v}|} \mathbf{v} \right| = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{v}|} |\mathbf{v}| = 1.$$

That is, $\mathbf{v}/|\mathbf{v}|$ is a unit vector in the direction of **v**, called **the direction** of the nonzero vector **v**.

EXAMPLE 4 Find a unit vector **u** in the direction of the vector from $P_1(1, 0, 1)$ to $P_2(3, 2, 0)$.

Solution We divide $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ by its length:

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = (3 - 1)\mathbf{i} + (2 - 0)\mathbf{j} + (0 - 1)\mathbf{k} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}| = \sqrt{(2)^2 + (2)^2 + (-1)^2} = \sqrt{4 + 4 + 1} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}}{|\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}|} = \frac{2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}}{3} = \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{k}.$$

The unit vector **u** is the direction of $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$. ■

EXAMPLE 5 If $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$ is a velocity vector, express **v** as a product of its speed times its direction of motion.

Solution Speed is the magnitude (length) of **v**:

$$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(3)^2 + (-4)^2} = \sqrt{9 + 16} = 5.$$

The unit vector $\mathbf{v}/|\mathbf{v}|$ is the direction of **v**:

$$\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = \frac{3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}}{5} = \frac{3}{5}\mathbf{i} - \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{j}.$$

HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHY
Hermann Grassmann
(1809–1877)

So

$$\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} = \underbrace{5}_{\text{Length (speed)}}\underbrace{\left(\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{i} - \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{j}\right)}_{\text{Direction of motion}}.$$

In summary, we can express any nonzero vector $\mathbf{v}$ in terms of its two important features, length and direction, by writing $\mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{v}|\dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$.

> If $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then
>
> **1.** $\dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ is a unit vector called the direction of $\mathbf{v}$;
>
> **2.** the equation $\mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{v}|\dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ expresses $\mathbf{v}$ as its length times its direction.

EXAMPLE 6 A force of 6 newtons is applied in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$. Express the force $\mathbf{F}$ as a product of its magnitude and direction.

Solution The force vector has magnitude 6 and direction $\dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$, so

$$\mathbf{F} = 6\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = 6\frac{2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{2^2 + 2^2 + (-1)^2}} = 6\frac{2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}}{3}$$

$$= 6\left(\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} - \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{k}\right).$$

Midpoint of a Line Segment

Vectors are often useful in geometry. For example, the coordinates of the midpoint of a line segment are found by averaging.

> The **midpoint** M of the line segment joining points $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is the point
>
> $$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \frac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right).$$

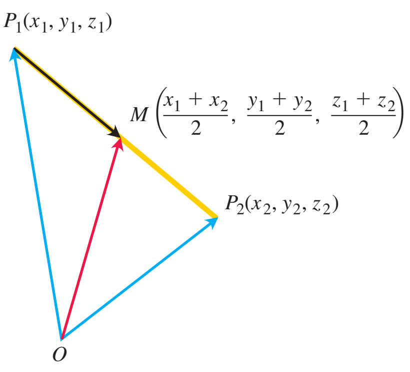


FIGURE 12.16 The coordinates of the midpoint are the averages of the coordinates of P_1 and P_2.

To see why, observe (Figure 12.16) that

$$\overrightarrow{OM} = \overrightarrow{OP_1} + \frac{1}{2}(\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}) = \overrightarrow{OP_1} + \frac{1}{2}(\overrightarrow{OP_2} - \overrightarrow{OP_1})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(\overrightarrow{OP_1} + \overrightarrow{OP_2})$$

$$= \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}\mathbf{i} + \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\mathbf{j} + \frac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\mathbf{k}.$$

EXAMPLE 7 The midpoint of the segment joining $P_1(3, -2, 0)$ and $P_2(7, 4, 4)$ is

$$\left(\frac{3 + 7}{2}, \frac{-2 + 4}{2}, \frac{0 + 4}{2}\right) = (5, 1, 2).$$

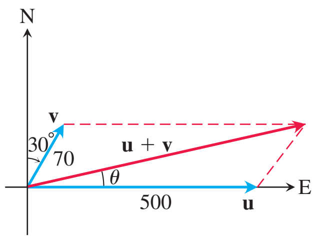


FIGURE 12.17 Vectors representing the velocities of the airplane **u** and tailwind **v** in Example 8.

Applications

An important application of vectors occurs in navigation.

EXAMPLE 8 A jet airliner, flying due east at 500 mph in still air, encounters a 70-mph tailwind blowing in the direction 60° north of east. The airplane holds its compass heading due east but, because of the wind, acquires a new ground speed and direction. What are they?

Solution If **u** is the velocity of the airplane alone and **v** is the velocity of the tailwind, then $|\mathbf{u}| = 500$ and $|\mathbf{v}| = 70$ (Figure 12.17). The velocity of the airplane with respect to the ground is given by the magnitude and direction of the resultant vector $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$. If we let the positive x-axis represent east and the positive y-axis represent north, then the component forms of **u** and **v** are

$$\mathbf{u} = \langle 500, 0 \rangle \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{v} = \langle 70 \cos 60°, 70 \sin 60° \rangle = \langle 35, 35\sqrt{3} \rangle.$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \langle 535, 35\sqrt{3} \rangle = 535\mathbf{i} + 35\sqrt{3}\,\mathbf{j}$$
$$|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{535^2 + (35\sqrt{3})^2} \approx 538.4$$

and

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{35\sqrt{3}}{535} \approx 6.5°. \qquad \text{Figure 12.17}$$

The new ground speed of the airplane is about 538.4 mph, and its new direction is about 6.5° north of east. ■

Another important application occurs in physics and engineering when several forces are acting on a single object.

EXAMPLE 9 A 75-N weight is suspended by two wires, as shown in Figure 12.18a. Find the forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ acting in both wires.

Solution The force vectors $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ have magnitudes $|\mathbf{F}_1|$ and $|\mathbf{F}_2|$ and components that are measured in newtons. The resultant force is the sum $\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and must be equal in magnitude and acting in the opposite (or upward) direction to the weight vector **w** (see Figure 12.18b). It follows from the figure that

$$\mathbf{F}_1 = \langle -|\mathbf{F}_1| \cos 55°, |\mathbf{F}_1| \sin 55° \rangle \qquad \text{and} \qquad \mathbf{F}_2 = \langle |\mathbf{F}_2| \cos 40°, |\mathbf{F}_2| \sin 40° \rangle.$$

Since $\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 = \langle 0, 75 \rangle$, the resultant vector leads to the system of equations

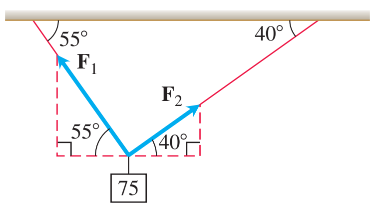
$$-|\mathbf{F}_1| \cos 55° + |\mathbf{F}_2| \cos 40° = 0$$
$$|\mathbf{F}_1| \sin 55° + |\mathbf{F}_2| \sin 40° = 75.$$

Solving for $|\mathbf{F}_2|$ in the first equation and substituting the result into the second equation, we get

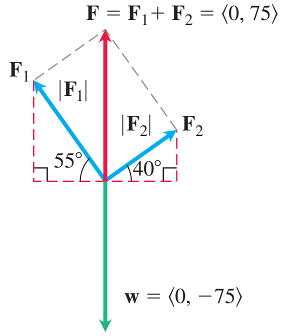
$$|\mathbf{F}_2| = \frac{|\mathbf{F}_1| \cos 55°}{\cos 40°} \qquad \text{and} \qquad |\mathbf{F}_1| \sin 55° + \frac{|\mathbf{F}_1| \cos 55°}{\cos 40°} \sin 40° = 75.$$

It follows that

$$|\mathbf{F}_1| = \frac{75}{\sin 55° + \cos 55° \tan 40°} \approx 57.67 \text{ N},$$



(a)



(b)

FIGURE 12.18 The suspended weight in Example 9.

and

$$|\mathbf{F}_2| = \frac{75 \cos 55°}{\sin 55° \cos 40° + \cos 55° \sin 40°}$$

$$= \frac{75 \cos 55°}{\sin (55° + 40°)} \approx 43.18 \text{ N}.$$

The force vectors are then $\mathbf{F}_1 = \langle -33.08, 47.24 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{F}_2 = \langle 33.08, 27.76 \rangle$. ■

Exercises 12.2

Vectors in the Plane

In Exercises 1–8, let $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 5 \rangle$. Find the **(a)** component form and **(b)** magnitude (length) of the vector.

1. $3\mathbf{u}$

2. $-2\mathbf{v}$

3. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$

4. $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$

5. $2\mathbf{u} - 3\mathbf{v}$

6. $-2\mathbf{u} + 5\mathbf{v}$

7. $\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{u} + \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{v}$

8. $-\frac{5}{13}\mathbf{u} + \frac{12}{13}\mathbf{v}$

In Exercises 9–16, find the component form of the vector.

9. The vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, where $P = (1, 3)$ and $Q = (2, -1)$

10. The vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ where O is the origin and P is the midpoint of segment RS, where $R = (2, -1)$ and $S = (-4, 3)$

11. The vector from the point $A = (2, 3)$ to the origin

12. The sum of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$, where $A = (1, -1)$, $B = (2, 0)$, $C = (-1, 3)$, and $D = (-2, 2)$

13. The unit vector that makes an angle $\theta = 2\pi/3$ with the positive x-axis

14. The unit vector that makes an angle $\theta = -3\pi/4$ with the positive x-axis

15. The unit vector obtained by rotating the vector $\langle 0, 1 \rangle$ 120° counterclockwise about the origin

16. The unit vector obtained by rotating the vector $\langle 1, 0 \rangle$ 135° counterclockwise about the origin

Vectors in Space

In Exercises 17–22, express each vector in the form $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$.

17. $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ if P_1 is the point $(5, 7, -1)$ and P_2 is the point $(2, 9, -2)$

18. $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ if P_1 is the point $(1, 2, 0)$ and P_2 is the point $(-3, 0, 5)$

19. $\overrightarrow{AB}$ if A is the point $(-7, -8, 1)$ and B is the point $(-10, 8, 1)$

20. $\overrightarrow{AB}$ if A is the point $(1, 0, 3)$ and B is the point $(-1, 4, 5)$

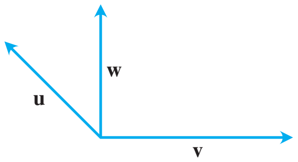
21. $5\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ if $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, 1, -1 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 0, 3 \rangle$

22. $-2\mathbf{u} + 3\mathbf{v}$ if $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 0, 2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 1, 1 \rangle$

Geometric Representations

In Exercises 23 and 24, copy vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ head to tail as needed to sketch the indicated vector.

23.



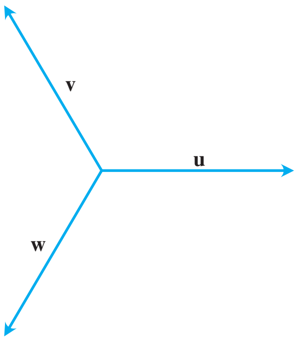
a. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$

b. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$

c. $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$

d. $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}$

24.



a. $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$

b. $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$

c. $2\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$

d. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$

Length and Direction

In Exercises 25–30, express each vector as a product of its length and direction.

25. $2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$

26. $9\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$

27. $5\mathbf{k}$

28. $\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{i} + \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{k}$

29. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{i} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{j} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{k}$

30. $\frac{\mathbf{i}}{\sqrt{3}} + \frac{\mathbf{j}}{\sqrt{3}} + \frac{\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{3}}$

31. Find the vectors whose lengths and directions are given. Try to do the calculations without writing.

Length	Direction
a. 2	$\mathbf{i}$
b. $\sqrt{3}$	$-\mathbf{k}$
c. $\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{j} + \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{k}$
d. 7	$\frac{6}{7}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{7}\mathbf{j} + \frac{3}{7}\mathbf{k}$

32. Find the vectors whose lengths and directions are given. Try to do the calculations without writing.

Length	Direction
a. 7	$-\mathbf{j}$
b. $\sqrt{2}$	$-\frac{3}{5}\mathbf{i} - \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{k}$
c. $\frac{13}{12}$	$\frac{3}{13}\mathbf{i} - \frac{4}{13}\mathbf{j} - \frac{12}{13}\mathbf{k}$
d. $a > 0$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\mathbf{j} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\mathbf{k}$

33. Find a vector of magnitude 7 in the direction of $\mathbf{v} = 12\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{k}$.

34. Find a vector of magnitude 3 in the direction opposite to the direction of $\mathbf{v} = (1/2)\mathbf{i} - (1/2)\mathbf{j} - (1/2)\mathbf{k}$.

Direction and Midpoints

In Exercises 35–38, find

a. the direction of $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ and

b. the midpoint of line segment P_1P_2.

35. $P_1(-1, 1, 5)$ $P_2(2, 5, 0)$

36. $P_1(1, 4, 5)$ $P_2(4, -2, 7)$

37. $P_1(3, 4, 5)$ $P_2(2, 3, 4)$

38. $P_1(0, 0, 0)$ $P_2(2, -2, -2)$

39. If $\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and B is the point (5, 1, 3), find A.

40. If $\overrightarrow{AB} = -7\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}$ and A is the point $(-2, -3, 6)$, find B.

Theory and Applications

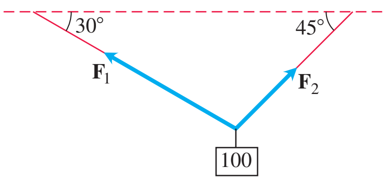
41. Linear combination Let $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$. Find scalars a and b such that $\mathbf{u} = a\mathbf{v} + b\mathbf{w}$.

42. Linear combination Let $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$. Write $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_1 + \mathbf{u}_2$, where $\mathbf{u}_1$ is parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ is parallel to $\mathbf{w}$. (See Exercise 41.)

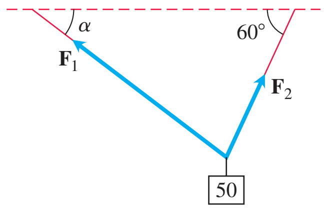
43. Velocity An airplane is flying in the direction 25° west of north at 800 km/h. Find the component form of the velocity of the airplane, assuming that the positive x-axis represents due east and the positive y-axis represents due north.

44. (*Continuation of Example 8.*) What speed and direction should the jetliner in Example 8 have in order for the resultant vector to be 500 mph due east?

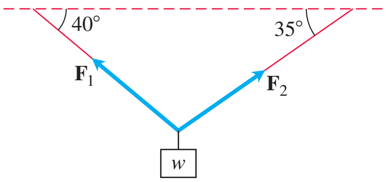
45. Consider a 100-N weight suspended by two wires as shown in the accompanying figure. Find the magnitudes and components of the force vectors $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$.



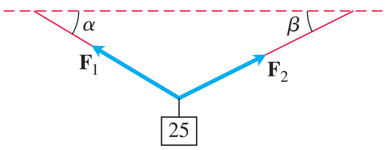
46. Consider a 50-N weight suspended by two wires as shown in the accompanying figure. If the magnitude of vector $\mathbf{F}_1$ is 35 N, find angle α and the magnitude of vector $\mathbf{F}_2$.



47. Consider a w-N weight suspended by two wires as shown in the accompanying figure. If the magnitude of vector $\mathbf{F}_2$ is 100 N, find w and the magnitude of vector $\mathbf{F}_1$.



48. Consider a 25-N weight suspended by two wires as shown in the accompanying figure. If the magnitudes of vectors $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ are both 75 N, then angles α and β are equal. Find α.



49. Location A bird flies from its nest 5 km in the direction 60° north of east, where it stops to rest on a tree. It then flies 10 km in the direction due southeast and lands atop a telephone pole. Place an xy-coordinate system so that the origin is the bird's nest, the x-axis points east, and the y-axis points north.

a. At what point is the tree located?

b. At what point is the telephone pole?

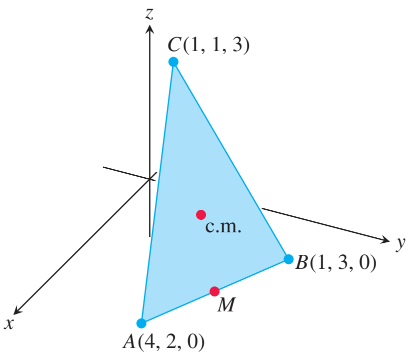
50. Use similar triangles to find the coordinates of the point Q that divides the segment from $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ into two lengths whose ratio is $p/q = r$.

51. Medians of a triangle Suppose that A, B, and C are the corner points of the thin triangular plate of constant density shown here.

a. Find the vector from C to the midpoint M of side AB.

b. Find the vector from C to the point that lies two-thirds of the way from C to M on the median CM.

c. Find the coordinates of the point in which the medians of ΔABC intersect. According to Exercise 19, Section 6.6, this point is the plate's center of mass. (See the accompanying figure.)



52. Find the vector from the origin to the point of intersection of the medians of the triangle whose vertices are

$$A(1, -1, 2), \quad B(2, 1, 3), \quad \text{and} \quad C(-1, 2, -1).$$

53. Let *ABCD* be a general, not necessarily planar, quadrilateral in space. Show that the two segments joining the midpoints of opposite sides of *ABCD* bisect each other. (*Hint:* Show that the segments have the same midpoint.)

54. Vectors are drawn from the center of a regular n-sided polygon in the plane to the vertices of the polygon. Show that the sum of the vectors is zero. (*Hint:* What happens to the sum if you rotate the polygon about its center?)

55. Suppose that A, B, and C are vertices of a triangle and that a, b, and c are, respectively, the midpoints of the opposite sides. Show that $\overrightarrow{Aa} + \overrightarrow{Bb} + \overrightarrow{Cc} = \mathbf{0}$.

56. Unit vectors in the plane Show that a unit vector in the plane can be expressed as $\mathbf{u} = (\cos\theta)\mathbf{i} + (\sin\theta)\mathbf{j}$, obtained by rotating $\mathbf{i}$ through an angle θ in the counterclockwise direction. Explain why this form gives *every* unit vector in the plane.

12.3 The Dot Product

If a force $\mathbf{F}$ is applied to a particle moving along a path, we often need to know the magnitude of the force in the direction of motion. If $\mathbf{v}$ is parallel to the tangent line to the path at the point where $\mathbf{F}$ is applied, then we want the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$. Figure 12.19 shows that the scalar quantity we seek is the length $|\mathbf{F}| \cos\theta$, where θ is the angle between the two vectors $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

In this section we show how to calculate easily the angle between two vectors directly from their components. A key part of the calculation is an expression called the *dot product*. Dot products are also called *inner* or *scalar* products because the product results in a scalar, not a vector. After investigating the dot product, we apply it to finding the projection of one vector onto another (as displayed in Figure 12.19) and to finding the work done by a constant force acting through a displacement.

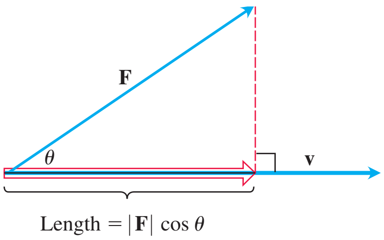


FIGURE 12.19 The magnitude of the force $\mathbf{F}$ in the direction of vector $\mathbf{v}$ is the length $|\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta$ of the projection of $\mathbf{F}$ onto $\mathbf{v}$.

Angle Between Vectors

When two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are placed so their initial points coincide, they form an angle θ of measure $0 \le \theta \le \pi$ (Figure 12.20). If the vectors do not lie along the same line, the angle θ is measured in the plane containing both of them. If they do lie along the same line, the angle between them is 0 if they point in the same direction and π if they point in opposite directions. The angle θ is the **angle between u** and $\mathbf{v}$. Theorem 1 gives a formula to determine this angle.

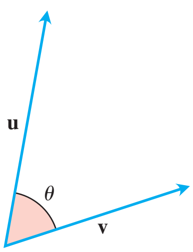


FIGURE 12.20 The angle between $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

THEOREM 1—Angle Between Two Vectors The angle θ between two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ is given by

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3}{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|}\right).$$

We use the law of cosines to prove Theorem 1, but before doing so, we focus attention on the expression $u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3$ in the calculation for θ. This expression is the sum of the products of the corresponding components for the vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

DEFINITION The **dot product** $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ (**"u dot v"**) of vectors $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2, u_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$ is the scalar

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2 + u_3 v_3.$$

EXAMPLE 1 We illustrate the definition.

(a) $\langle 1, -2, -1 \rangle \cdot \langle -6, 2, -3 \rangle = (1)(-6) + (-2)(2) + (-1)(-3)$
$$= -6 - 4 + 3 = -7$$

(b) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}\right) \cdot (4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)(4) + (3)(-1) + (1)(2) = 1$ ■

The dot product of a pair of two-dimensional vectors is defined in a similar fashion:

$$\langle u_1, u_2 \rangle \cdot \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle = u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2.$$

We will see throughout the remainder of the book that the dot product is a key tool for many important geometric and physical calculations in space (and the plane), not just for finding the angle between two vectors.

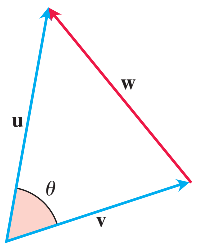


FIGURE 12.21 The parallelogram law of addition of vectors gives $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

Proof of Theorem 1 Applying the law of cosines (Equation (8), Section 1.3) to the triangle in Figure 12.21, we find that

$$|\mathbf{w}|^2 = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta \qquad \text{Law of cosines}$$
$$2|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - |\mathbf{w}|^2.$$

Because $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, the component form of $\mathbf{w}$ is $\langle u_1 - v_1, u_2 - v_2, u_3 - v_3 \rangle$. So

$$|\mathbf{u}|^2 = \left(\sqrt{u_1^2 + u_2^2 + u_3^2}\right)^2 = u_1^2 + u_2^2 + u_3^2$$
$$|\mathbf{v}|^2 = \left(\sqrt{v_1^2 + v_2^2 + v_3^2}\right)^2 = v_1^2 + v_2^2 + v_3^2$$
$$|\mathbf{w}|^2 = \left(\sqrt{(u_1 - v_1)^2 + (u_2 - v_2)^2 + (u_3 - v_3)^2}\right)^2$$
$$= (u_1 - v_1)^2 + (u_2 - v_2)^2 + (u_3 - v_3)^2$$
$$= u_1^2 - 2u_1v_1 + v_1^2 + u_2^2 - 2u_2v_2 + v_2^2 + u_3^2 - 2u_3v_3 + v_3^2$$

and

$$|\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - |\mathbf{w}|^2 = 2(u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3).$$

Therefore,

$$2|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = |\mathbf{u}|^2 + |\mathbf{v}|^2 - |\mathbf{w}|^2 = 2(u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3)$$
$$|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3$$
$$\cos\theta = \frac{u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3}{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|}.$$

Since $0 \le \theta < \pi$, we have

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3}{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|}\right). \qquad ■$$

The Angle Between Two Nonzero Vectors u and v

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|}\right)$$

EXAMPLE 2 Find the angle between $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$.

Solution We use the formula above:

$$\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = (1)(6) + (-2)(3) + (-2)(2) = 6 - 6 - 4 = -4$$
$$|\mathbf{u}| = \sqrt{(1)^2 + (-2)^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$
$$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(6)^2 + (3)^2 + (2)^2} = \sqrt{49} = 7$$
$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-4}{(3)(7)}\right) \approx 1.76 \text{ radians or } 100.98°.$$

The angle formula applies to two-dimensional vectors as well. Note that the angle θ is acute if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} > 0$ and obtuse if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} < 0$.

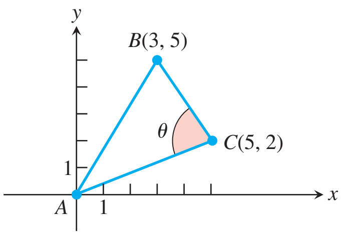


FIGURE 12.22 The triangle in Example 3.

EXAMPLE 3 Find the angle θ in the triangle ABC determined by the vertices $A = (0, 0)$, $B = (3, 5)$, and $C = (5, 2)$ (Figure 12.22).

Solution The angle θ is the angle between the vectors $\overrightarrow{CA}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB}$. The component forms of these two vectors are

$$\overrightarrow{CA} = \langle -5, -2\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \overrightarrow{CB} = \langle -2, 3\rangle.$$

First we calculate the dot product and magnitudes of these two vectors.

$$\overrightarrow{CA}\cdot\overrightarrow{CB} = (-5)(-2) + (-2)(3) = 4$$
$$|\overrightarrow{CA}| = \sqrt{(-5)^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{29}$$
$$|\overrightarrow{CB}| = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + (3)^2} = \sqrt{13}$$

Then applying the angle formula, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\overrightarrow{CA}\cdot\overrightarrow{CB}}{|\overrightarrow{CA}||\overrightarrow{CB}|}\right)\\ &= \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{(\sqrt{29})(\sqrt{13})}\right)\\ &\approx 78.1° \text{ or } 1.36 \text{ radians.}\end{aligned}$$

Orthogonal Vectors

Two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are perpendicular if the angle between them is $\pi/2$. For such vectors, we have $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$ because $\cos(\pi/2) = 0$. The converse is also true. If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are nonzero vectors with $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = 0$, then $\cos\theta = 0$ and $\theta = \cos^{-1} 0 = \pi/2$. The following definition also allows for one or both of the vectors to be the zero vector.

DEFINITION Vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are orthogonal if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$.

EXAMPLE 4 To determine if two vectors are orthogonal, calculate their dot product.

(a) $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -2\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 6\rangle$ are orthogonal because $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = (3)(4) + (-2)(6) = 0$.

(b) $\mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$ are orthogonal because $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = (3)(0) + (-2)(2) + (1)(4) = 0$.

(c) **0** is orthogonal to every vector **u** since

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{0}\cdot\mathbf{u} &= \langle 0, 0, 0\rangle \cdot \langle u_1, u_2, u_3\rangle \\ &= (0)(u_1) + (0)(u_2) + (0)(u_3) \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

Dot Product Properties and Vector Projections

The dot product obeys many of the laws that hold for ordinary products of real numbers (scalars).

Properties of the Dot Product

If **u**, **v**, and **w** are any vectors and c is a scalar, then

1. $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}$
2. $(c\mathbf{u})\cdot\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u}\cdot(c\mathbf{v}) = c(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})$
3. $\mathbf{u}\cdot(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{w}$
4. $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{u}|^2$
5. $\mathbf{0}\cdot\mathbf{u} = 0.$

Proofs of Properties 1 and 3 The properties are easy to prove using the definition. For instance, here are the proofs of Properties 1 and 3.

1. $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3 = v_1u_1 + v_2u_2 + v_3u_3 = \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}$

3.
$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u}\cdot(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}) &= \langle u_1, u_2, u_3\rangle \cdot \langle v_1 + w_1, v_2 + w_2, v_3 + w_3\rangle \\ &= u_1(v_1 + w_1) + u_2(v_2 + w_2) + u_3(v_3 + w_3) \\ &= u_1v_1 + u_1w_1 + u_2v_2 + u_2w_2 + u_3v_3 + u_3w_3 \\ &= (u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + u_3v_3) + (u_1w_1 + u_2w_2 + u_3w_3) \\ &= \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{w}\end{aligned}$$

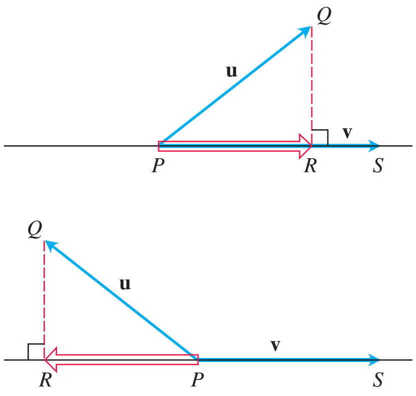


FIGURE 12.23 The vector projection of **u** onto **v**.

We now return to the problem of projecting one vector onto another, posed in the opening to this section. The **vector projection** of $\mathbf{u} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ onto a nonzero vector $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{PS}$ (Figure 12.23) is the vector $\overrightarrow{PR}$ determined by dropping a perpendicular from Q to the line PS. The notation for this vector is

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} \qquad \text{("the vector projection of } \mathbf{u} \text{ onto } \mathbf{v}\text{")}.$$

If **u** represents a force, then $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ represents the effective force in the direction of **v** (Figure 12.24).

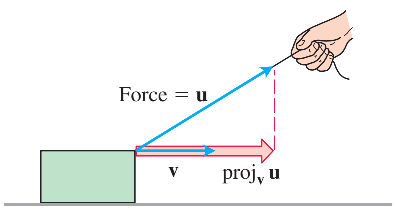


FIGURE 12.24 If we pull on the box with force **u**, the effective force moving the box forward in the direction **v** is the projection of **u** onto **v**.

If the angle θ between **u** and **v** is acute, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ has length $|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta$ and direction $\mathbf{v}/|\mathbf{v}|$ (Figure 12.25). If θ is obtuse, $\cos\theta < 0$ and $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ has length $-|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta$ and direction $-\mathbf{v}/|\mathbf{v}|$. In both cases,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} &= \left(|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta\right)\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} \\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}\right)\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} \qquad |\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta = \frac{|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta}{|\mathbf{v}|} = \frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} \\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}.\end{aligned}$$

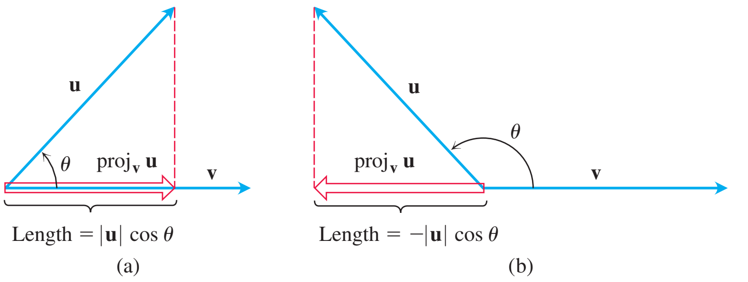


FIGURE 12.25 The length of $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ is (a) $|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta$ if $\cos\theta \geq 0$ and (b) $-|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta$ if $\cos\theta < 0$.

The number $|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta$ is called the **scalar component of u in the direction of v** (or of **u onto v**). To summarize,

> The vector projection of **u** onto **v** is the vector
>
> $$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}. \qquad (1)$$
>
> The scalar component of **u** in the direction of **v** is the scalar
>
> $$|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = \mathbf{u}\cdot\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}. \qquad (2)$$

Note that both the vector projection of **u** onto **v** and the scalar component of **u** onto **v** depend only on the direction of the vector **v** and not its length (because we dot **u** with $\mathbf{v}/|\mathbf{v}|$, which is the direction of **v**).

EXAMPLE 5 Find the vector projection of $\mathbf{u} = 6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ onto $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$ and the scalar component of **u** in the direction of **v**.

Solution We find $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ from Equation (1):

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{v} = \frac{6-6-4}{1+4+4}(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k})$$

$$= -\frac{4}{9}(\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}) = -\frac{4}{9}\mathbf{i} + \frac{8}{9}\mathbf{j} + \frac{8}{9}\mathbf{k}.$$

We find the scalar component of **u** in the direction of **v** from Equation (2):

$$|\mathbf{u}|\cos\theta = \mathbf{u}\cdot\frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = (6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k})\cdot\left(\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{k}\right)$$

$$= 2 - 2 - \frac{4}{3} = -\frac{4}{3}.$$

Equations (1) and (2) also apply to two-dimensional vectors. We demonstrate this in the next example.

EXAMPLE 6 Find the vector projection of a force $\mathbf{F} = 5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ onto $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$ and the scalar component of **F** in the direction of **v**.

Solution The vector projection is

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{F} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}$$
$$= \frac{5-6}{1+9}(\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}) = -\frac{1}{10}(\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j})$$
$$= -\frac{1}{10}\mathbf{i} + \frac{3}{10}\mathbf{j}.$$

The scalar component of **F** in the direction of **v** is

$$|\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} = \frac{5-6}{\sqrt{1+9}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{10}}.$$ ■

A routine calculation (see Exercise 29) verifies that the vector $\mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to the projection vector $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$ (which has the same direction as **v**). So the equation

$$\mathbf{u} = \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}) = \underbrace{\left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}}_{\text{Parallel to }\mathbf{v}} + \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{u} - \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}\right)}_{\text{Orthogonal to }\mathbf{v}}$$

expresses **u** as a sum of orthogonal vectors.

Work

In Chapter 6, we calculated the work done by a constant force of magnitude F in moving an object through a distance d as $W = Fd$. That formula holds only if the force is directed along the line of motion. If a force **F** moving an object through a displacement $\mathbf{D} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ has some other direction, the work is performed by the component of **F** in the direction of **D**. If θ is the angle between **F** and **D** (Figure 12.26), then

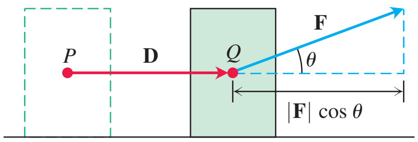


FIGURE 12.26 The work done by a constant force **F** during a displacement **D** is $(|\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta)|\mathbf{D}|$, which is the dot product $\mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{D}$.

$$\text{Work} = \left(\begin{array}{l}\text{scalar component of } \mathbf{F}\\ \text{in the direction of } \mathbf{D}\end{array}\right)(\text{length of } \mathbf{D})$$
$$= (|\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta)|\mathbf{D}|$$
$$= \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{D}.$$

DEFINITION The **work** done by a constant force **F** acting through a displacement $\mathbf{D} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ is

$$W = \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{D}.$$

EXAMPLE 7 If $|\mathbf{F}| = 40$ N (newtons), $|\mathbf{D}| = 3$ m, and $\theta = 60°$, the work done by **F** in acting from P to Q is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Work} &= \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{D} && \text{Definition}\\ &= |\mathbf{F}||\mathbf{D}|\cos\theta \\ &= (40)(3)\cos 60° && \text{Given values}\\ &= (120)(1/2) = 60 \text{ J (joules)}. \end{aligned}$$ ■

We encounter more challenging work problems in Chapter 16 when we learn to find the work done by a variable force along a more general *path* in space.

Exercises 12.3

Dot Product and Projections

In Exercises 1–8, find

a. $\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}$, $|\mathbf{v}|$, $|\mathbf{u}|$

b. the cosine of the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u}$

c. the scalar component of $\mathbf{u}$ in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$

d. the vector $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u}$.

1. $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + \sqrt{5}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = -2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - \sqrt{5}\mathbf{k}$

2. $\mathbf{v} = (3/5)\mathbf{i} + (4/5)\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = 5\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}$

3. $\mathbf{v} = 10\mathbf{i} + 11\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$

4. $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + 10\mathbf{j} - 11\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

5. $\mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

6. $\mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = \sqrt{2}\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{3}\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$

7. $\mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + \sqrt{17}\mathbf{j}$

8. $\mathbf{v} = \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \right\rangle$, $\quad \mathbf{u} = \left\langle \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \right\rangle$

Angle Between Vectors

T Find the angles between the vectors in Exercises 9–12 to the nearest hundredth of a radian.

9. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$

10. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{k}$

11. $\mathbf{u} = \sqrt{3}\mathbf{i} - 7\mathbf{j}$, $\quad \mathbf{v} = \sqrt{3}\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$

12. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + \sqrt{2}\mathbf{j} - \sqrt{2}\mathbf{k}$, $\quad \mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

13. Triangle Find the measures of the angles of the triangle whose vertices are $A = (-1, 0)$, $B = (2, 1)$, and $C = (1, -2)$.

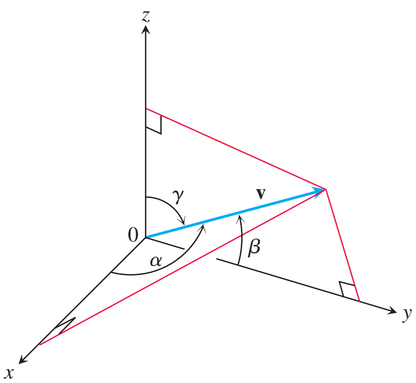
14. Rectangle Find the measures of the angles between the diagonals of the rectangle whose vertices are $A = (1, 0)$, $B = (0, 3)$, $C = (3, 4)$, and $D = (4, 1)$.

15. Direction angles and direction cosines The *direction angles* α, β, and γ of a vector $\mathbf{v} = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$ are defined as follows:

α is the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and the positive x-axis $(0 \le \alpha \le \pi)$

β is the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and the positive y-axis $(0 \le \beta \le \pi)$

γ is the angle between $\mathbf{v}$ and the positive z-axis $(0 \le \gamma \le \pi)$.



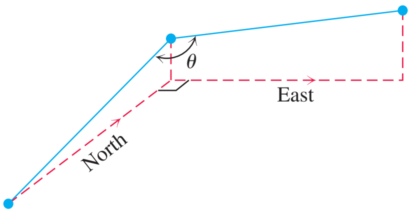
a. Show that

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{a}{|\mathbf{v}|}, \qquad \cos\beta = \frac{b}{|\mathbf{v}|}, \qquad \cos\gamma = \frac{c}{|\mathbf{v}|},$$

and $\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1$. These cosines are called the *direction cosines* of $\mathbf{v}$.

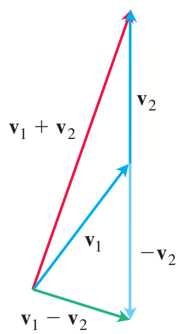
b. Unit vectors are built from direction cosines Show that if $\mathbf{v} = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j} + c\mathbf{k}$ is a unit vector, then a, b, and c are the direction cosines of $\mathbf{v}$.

16. Water main construction A water main is to be constructed with a 20% grade in the north direction and a 10% grade in the east direction. Determine the angle θ required in the water main for the turn from north to east.

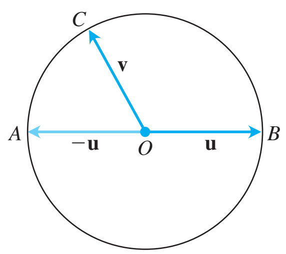


Theory and Examples

17. Sums and differences In the accompanying figure, it looks as if $\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2$ and $\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2$ are orthogonal. Is this mere coincidence, or are there circumstances under which we may expect the sum of two vectors to be orthogonal to their difference? Give reasons for your answer.



18. Orthogonality on a circle Suppose that AB is the diameter of a circle with center O and that C is a point on one of the two arcs joining A and B. Show that $\overrightarrow{CA}$ and $\overrightarrow{CB}$ are orthogonal.

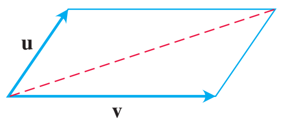


19. Diagonals of a rhombus Show that the diagonals of a rhombus (parallelogram with sides of equal length) are perpendicular.

20. **Perpendicular diagonals** Show that squares are the only rectangles with perpendicular diagonals.

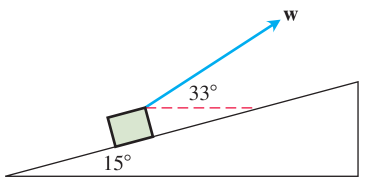
21. **When parallelograms are rectangles** Prove that a parallelogram is a rectangle if and only if its diagonals are equal in length. (This fact is often exploited by carpenters.)

22. **Diagonal of parallelogram** Show that the indicated diagonal of the parallelogram determined by vectors **u** and **v** bisects the angle between **u** and **v** if $|\mathbf{u}| = |\mathbf{v}|$.



23. **Projectile motion** A gun with muzzle velocity of 1200 ft/sec is fired at an angle of 8° above the horizontal. Find the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity.

24. **Inclined plane** Suppose that a box is being towed up an inclined plane as shown in the figure. Find the force **w** needed to make the component of the force parallel to the inclined plane equal to 2.5 lb.



25. **a. Cauchy-Schwartz inequality** Since $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta$, show that the inequality $|\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}| \le |\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|$ holds for any vectors **u** and **v**.

    b. Under what circumstances, if any, does $|\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}|$ equal $|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|$? Give reasons for your answer.

26. **Dot multiplication is positive definite** Show that dot multiplication of vectors is *positive definite*; that is, show that $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} \ge 0$ for every vector **u** and that $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$.

27. **Orthogonal unit vectors** If $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ are orthogonal unit vectors and $\mathbf{v} = a\mathbf{u}_1 + b\mathbf{u}_2$, find $\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}_1$.

28. **Cancellation in dot products** In real-number multiplication, if $uv_1 = uv_2$ and $u \ne 0$, we can cancel the u and conclude that $v_1 = v_2$. Does the same rule hold for the dot product? That is, if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}_2$ and $\mathbf{u} \ne \mathbf{0}$, can you conclude that $\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{v}_2$? Give reasons for your answer.

29. Using the definition of the projection of **u** onto **v**, show by direct calculation that $(\mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u})\cdot\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\,\mathbf{u} = 0$.

30. A force $\mathbf{F} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ is applied to a spacecraft with velocity vector $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$. Express **F** as a sum of a vector parallel to **v** and a vector orthogonal to **v**.

Equations for Lines in the Plane

31. **Line perpendicular to a vector** Show that $\mathbf{v} = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ is perpendicular to the line $ax + by = c$ by establishing that the slope of the vector **v** is the negative reciprocal of the slope of the given line.

32. **Line parallel to a vector** Show that the vector $\mathbf{v} = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ is parallel to the line $bx - ay = c$ by establishing that the slope of the line segment representing **v** is the same as the slope of the given line.

In Exercises 33–36, use the result of Exercise 31 to find an equation for the line through P perpendicular to **v**. Then sketch the line. Include **v** in your sketch *as a vector starting at the origin.*

33. $P(2, 1)$, $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$
34. $P(-1, 2)$, $\mathbf{v} = -2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$
35. $P(-2, -7)$, $\mathbf{v} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$
36. $P(11, 10)$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$

In Exercises 37–40, use the result of Exercise 32 to find an equation for the line through P parallel to **v**. Then sketch the line. Include **v** in your sketch *as a vector starting at the origin*.

37. $P(-2, 1)$, $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$
38. $P(0, -2)$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$
39. $P(1, 2)$, $\mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$
40. $P(1, 3)$, $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$

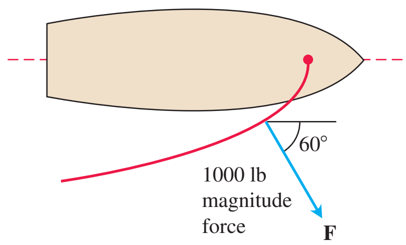
Work

41. **Work along a line** Find the work done by a force $\mathbf{F} = 5\mathbf{i}$ (magnitude 5 N) in moving an object along the line from the origin to the point (1, 1) (distance in meters).

42. **Locomotive** The Union Pacific's *Big Boy* locomotive could pull 6000-ton trains with a tractive effort (pull) of 602,148 N (135,375 lb). At this level of effort, about how much work did *Big Boy* do on the (approximately straight) 605-km journey from San Francisco to Los Angeles?

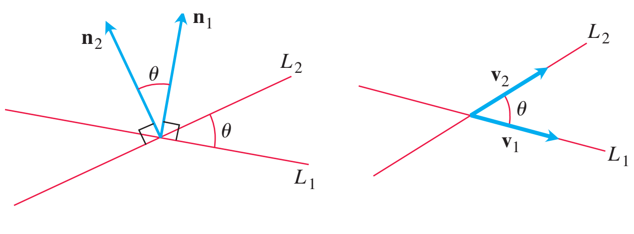
43. **Inclined plane** How much work does it take to slide a crate 20 m along a loading dock by pulling on it with a 200-N force at an angle of 30° from the horizontal?

44. **Sailboat** The wind passing over a boat's sail exerted a 1000-lb magnitude force **F** as shown here. How much work did the wind perform in moving the boat forward 1 mi? Answer in foot-pounds.



Angles Between Lines in the Plane

The **acute angle between intersecting lines** that do not cross at right angles is the same as the angle determined by vectors normal to the lines or by the vectors parallel to the lines.



Use this fact and the results of Exercise 31 or 32 to find the acute angles between the lines in Exercises 45–50.

45. $3x + y = 5, \quad 2x - y = 4$

46. $y = \sqrt{3}x - 1, \quad y = -\sqrt{3}x + 2$

47. $\sqrt{3}x - y = -2, \quad x - \sqrt{3}y = 1$

48. $x + \sqrt{3}y = 1, \quad \left(1 - \sqrt{3}\right)x + \left(1 + \sqrt{3}\right)y = 8$

49. $3x - 4y = 3, \quad x - y = 7$

50. $12x + 5y = 1, \quad 2x - 2y = 3$

12.4 The Cross Product

In studying lines in the plane, when we needed to describe how a line was tilting, we used the notions of slope and angle of inclination. In space, we want a way to describe how a *plane* is tilting. We accomplish this by multiplying two vectors in the plane together to get a third vector perpendicular to the plane. The direction of this third vector tells us the "inclination" of the plane. The product we use to multiply the vectors together is the *vector* or *cross product*, the second of the two vector multiplication methods. We study the cross product in this section.

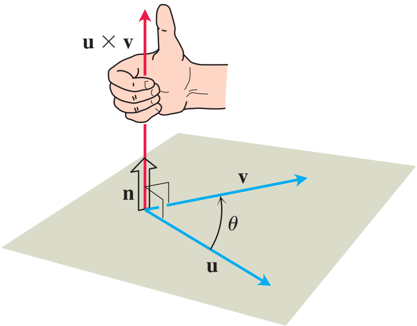


FIGURE 12.27 The construction of $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$.

The Cross Product of Two Vectors in Space

We start with two nonzero vectors **u** and **v** in space. If **u** and **v** are not parallel, they determine a plane. We select a unit vector **n** perpendicular to the plane by the **right-hand rule**. This means that we choose **n** to be the unit (normal) vector that points the way your right thumb points when your fingers curl through the angle θ from **u** to **v** (Figure 12.27). Then we define a new vector as follows.

DEFINITION The **cross product u × v ("u cross v")** is the vector

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \left(|\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}| \sin \theta\right) \mathbf{n}.$$

Unlike the dot product, the cross product is a vector. For this reason it's also called the **vector product** of **u** and **v**, and applies *only* to vectors in space. The vector $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ is orthogonal to both **u** and **v** because it is a scalar multiple of **n**.

There is a straightforward way to calculate the cross product of two vectors from their components. The method does not require that we know the angle between them (as suggested by the definition), but we postpone that calculation momentarily so we can focus first on the properties of the cross product.

Since the sines of 0 and π are both zero, it makes sense to define the cross product of two parallel nonzero vectors to be **0**. If one or both of **u** and **v** are zero, we also define $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ to be zero. This way, the cross product of two vectors **u** and **v** is zero if and only if **u** and **v** are parallel or one or both of them are zero.

Parallel Vectors

Nonzero vectors **u** and **v** are parallel if and only if $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

The cross product obeys the following laws.

Properties of the Cross Product

If **u**, **v**, and **w** are any vectors and r, s are scalars, then

1. $(r\mathbf{u}) \times (s\mathbf{v}) = (rs)(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

2. $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$

3. $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

4. $(\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{u}$

5. $\mathbf{0} \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$

6. $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w})\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{w}$

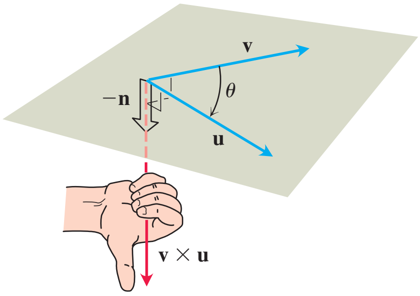


FIGURE 12.28 The construction of $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}$.

To visualize Property 3, for example, notice that when the fingers of your right hand curl through the angle θ from $\mathbf{v}$ to $\mathbf{u}$, your thumb points the opposite way; the unit vector we choose in forming $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}$ is the negative of the one we choose in forming $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ (Figure 12.28).

Property 1 can be verified by applying the definition of cross product to both sides of the equation and comparing the results. Property 2 is proved in Appendix 8. Property 4 follows by multiplying both sides of the equation in Property 2 by -1 and reversing the order of the products using Property 3. Property 5 is a definition. As a rule, cross product multiplication is *not associative* so $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \times \mathbf{w}$ does not generally equal $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$. (See Additional Exercise 17.)

When we apply the definition and Property 3 to calculate the pairwise cross products of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$, we find (Figure 12.29)

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = -(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}) = \mathbf{k}$$
$$\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = -(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}) = \mathbf{i}$$
$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = -(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}) = \mathbf{j}$$

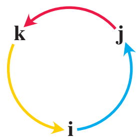


Diagram for recalling cross products

and

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}.$$

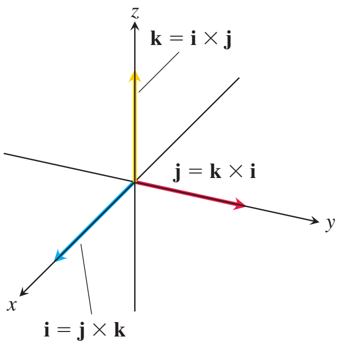


FIGURE 12.29 The pairwise cross products of $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$.

$|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}|$ Is the Area of a Parallelogram

Because $\mathbf{n}$ is a unit vector, the magnitude of $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ is

$$|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}| = |\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\,|\sin\theta|\,|\mathbf{n}| = |\mathbf{u}||\mathbf{v}|\sin\theta.$$

This is the area of the parallelogram determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ (Figure 12.30), $|\mathbf{u}|$ being the base of the parallelogram and $|\mathbf{v}||\sin\theta|$ the height.

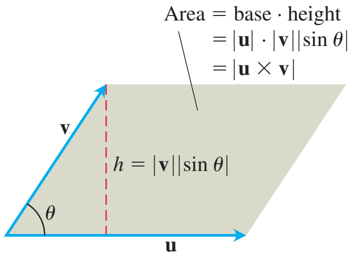


FIGURE 12.30 The parallelogram determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

Determinant Formula for $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$

Our next objective is to calculate $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ from the components of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ relative to a Cartesian coordinate system.

Suppose that

$$\mathbf{u} = u_1\mathbf{i} + u_2\mathbf{j} + u_3\mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}.$$

Then the distributive laws and the rules for multiplying $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$ tell us that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} &= (u_1\mathbf{i} + u_2\mathbf{j} + u_3\mathbf{k}) \times (v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k})\\ &= u_1v_1\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} + u_1v_2\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} + u_1v_3\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}\\ &\quad + u_2v_1\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i} + u_2v_2\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} + u_2v_3\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k}\\ &\quad + u_3v_1\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} + u_3v_2\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j} + u_3v_3\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k}\\ &= (u_2v_3 - u_3v_2)\mathbf{i} - (u_1v_3 - u_3v_1)\mathbf{j} + (u_1v_2 - u_2v_1)\mathbf{k}.\end{aligned}$$

The component terms in the last line are hard to remember, but they are the same as the terms in the expansion of the symbolic determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Determinants
2×2 and 3×3 determinants are evaluated as follows:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - bc$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}$$

So we restate the calculation in this easy-to-remember form.

Calculating the Cross Product as a Determinant

If $\mathbf{u} = u_1\mathbf{i} + u_2\mathbf{j} + u_3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$, then

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix}.$$

EXAMPLE 1 Find $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}$ if $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = -4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

Solution We expand the symbolic determinant:

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -4 & 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -4 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -4 & 3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= -2\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = 2\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 10\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{Property 3}$$

■

EXAMPLE 2 Find a vector perpendicular to the plane of $P(1, -1, 0)$, $Q(2, 1, -1)$, and $R(-1, 1, 2)$ (Figure 12.31).

Solution The vector $\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}$ is perpendicular to the plane because it is perpendicular to both vectors. In terms of components,

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = (2 - 1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 1)\mathbf{j} + (-1 - 0)\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$$

$$\overrightarrow{PR} = (-1 - 1)\mathbf{i} + (1 + 1)\mathbf{j} + (2 - 0)\mathbf{k} = -2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$$

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= 6\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{k}.$$

■

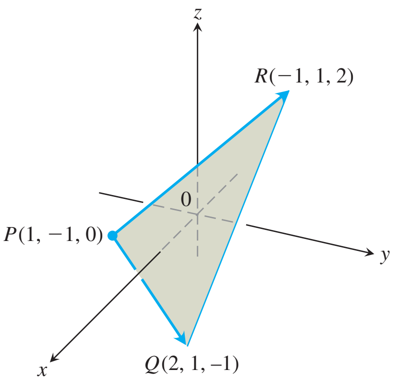


FIGURE 12.31 The vector $\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}$ is perpendicular to the plane of triangle PQR (Example 2). The area of triangle PQR is half of $|\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}|$ (Example 3).

EXAMPLE 3 Find the area of the triangle with vertices $P(1, -1, 0)$, $Q(2, 1, -1)$, and $R(-1, 1, 2)$ (Figure 12.31).

Solution The area of the parallelogram determined by P, Q, and R is

$$|\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}| = |6\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{k}| \qquad \text{Values from Example 2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(6)^2 + (6)^2} = \sqrt{2 \cdot 36} = 6\sqrt{2}.$$

The triangle's area is half of this, or $3\sqrt{2}$. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Find a unit vector perpendicular to the plane of $P(1, -1, 0)$, $Q(2, 1, -1)$, and $R(-1, 1, 2)$.

Solution Since $\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}$ is perpendicular to the plane, its direction $\mathbf{n}$ is a unit vector perpendicular to the plane. Taking values from Examples 2 and 3, we have

$$\mathbf{n} = \frac{\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}}{|\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}|} = \frac{6\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{k}}{6\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\mathbf{k}.$$

■

For ease in calculating the cross product using determinants, we usually write vectors in the form $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$ rather than as ordered triples $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2, v_3 \rangle$.

Torque

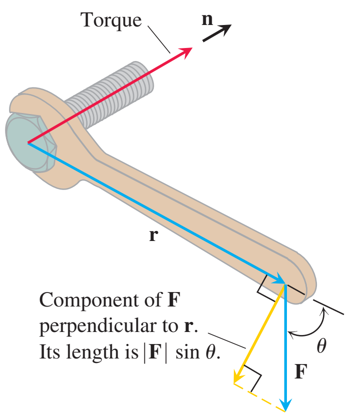


FIGURE 12.32 The torque vector describes the tendency of the force **F** to drive the bolt forward.

When we turn a bolt by applying a force **F** to a wrench (Figure 12.32), we produce a torque that causes the bolt to rotate. The **torque vector** points in the direction of the axis of the bolt according to the right-hand rule (so the rotation is counterclockwise when viewed from the *tip* of the vector). The magnitude of the torque depends on how far out on the wrench the force is applied and on how much of the force is perpendicular to the wrench at the point of application. The number we use to measure the torque's magnitude is the product of the length of the lever arm **r** and the scalar component of **F** perpendicular to **r**. In the notation of Figure 12.32,

$$\text{Magnitude of torque vector} = |\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{F}|\sin\theta,$$

or $|\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}|$. If we let **n** be a unit vector along the axis of the bolt in the direction of the torque, then a complete description of the torque vector is $\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$, or

$$\text{Torque vector} = (|\mathbf{r}||\mathbf{F}|\sin\theta)\,\mathbf{n}.$$

Recall that we defined $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ to be **0** when **u** and **v** are parallel. This is consistent with the torque interpretation as well. If the force **F** in Figure 12.32 is parallel to the wrench, meaning that we are trying to turn the bolt by pushing or pulling along the line of the wrench's handle, the torque produced is zero.

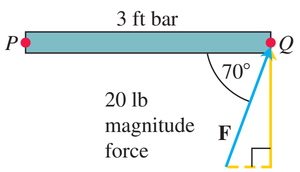


FIGURE 12.33 The magnitude of the torque exerted by **F** at *P* is about 56.4 ft-lb (Example 5). The bar rotates counterclockwise around *P*.

EXAMPLE 5 The magnitude of the torque generated by force **F** at the pivot point *P* in Figure 12.33 is

$$\begin{aligned} |\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \mathbf{F}| &= |\overrightarrow{PQ}||\mathbf{F}|\sin 70^\circ \\ &\approx (3)(20)(0.94) \\ &\approx 56.4 \text{ ft-lb}. \end{aligned}$$

In this example the torque vector is pointing out of the page toward you. ■

Triple Scalar or Box Product

The product $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}$ is called the **triple scalar product** of **u**, **v**, and **w** (in that order). As you can see from the formula

$$|(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}| = |\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}||\mathbf{w}||\cos\theta|,$$

the absolute value of this product is the volume of the parallelepiped (parallelogram-sided box) determined by **u**, **v**, and **w** (Figure 12.34). The number $|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}|$ is the area of the base

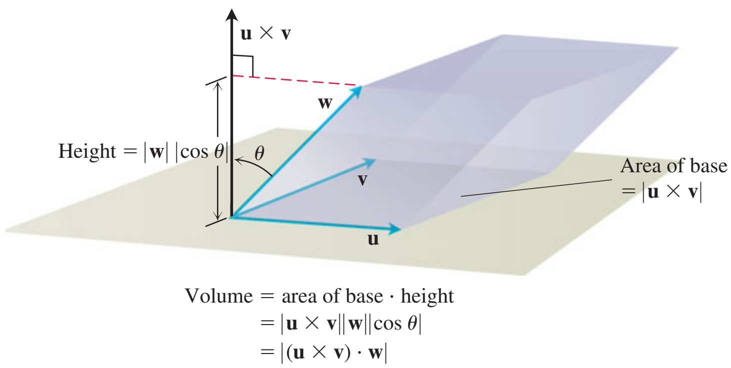


FIGURE 12.34 The number $|(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}|$ is the volume of a parallelepiped.

parallelogram. The number $|\mathbf{w}||\cos\theta|$ is the parallelepiped's height. Because of this geometry, $(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w}$ is also called the **box product** of **u**, **v**, and **w**.

By treating the planes of **v** and **w** and of **w** and **u** as the base planes of the parallelepiped determined by **u**, **v**, and **w**, we see that

$$(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{w})\cdot\mathbf{u} = (\mathbf{w}\times\mathbf{u})\cdot\mathbf{v}.$$

The dot and cross may be interchanged in a triple scalar product without altering is value.

Since the dot product is commutative, we also have

$$(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u}\cdot(\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{w}).$$

The triple scalar product can be evaluated as a determinant:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w} &= \left[\begin{vmatrix} u_2 & u_3 \\ v_2 & v_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_3\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ v_1 & v_2\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}\right]\cdot\mathbf{w} \\
&= w_1\begin{vmatrix} u_2 & u_3 \\ v_2 & v_3\end{vmatrix} - w_2\begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_3\end{vmatrix} + w_3\begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ v_1 & v_2\end{vmatrix} \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ w_1 & w_2 & w_3\end{vmatrix}.
\end{aligned}$$

Calculating the Triple Scalar Product as a Determinant

$$(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w} = \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ w_1 & w_2 & w_3\end{vmatrix}$$

EXAMPLE 6 Find the volume of the box (parallelepiped) determined by $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{k}$, and $\mathbf{w} = 7\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$.

Solution Using the rule for calculating a 3×3 determinant, we find

$$(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 7 & -4\end{vmatrix} = (1)\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 7 & -4\end{vmatrix} - (2)\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -4\end{vmatrix} + (-1)\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 7\end{vmatrix} = -23.$$

The volume is $|(\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v})\cdot\mathbf{w}| = 23$ units cubed. ■

Exercises 12.4

Cross Product Calculations

In Exercises 1–8, find the length and direction (when defined) of $\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v}\times\mathbf{u}$.

1. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$
2. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}, \quad \mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$
3. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$
4. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$
5. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{v} = -3\mathbf{j}$
6. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k}$
7. $\mathbf{u} = -8\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
8. $\mathbf{u} = \frac{3}{2}\mathbf{i} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$

In Exercises 9–14, sketch the coordinate axes and then include the vectors **u**, **v**, and $\mathbf{u}\times\mathbf{v}$ as vectors starting at the origin.

9. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{j}$
10. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{j}$
11. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
12. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$
13. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$
14. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i}$

Triangles in Space

In Exercises 15–18,

a. Find the area of the triangle determined by the points P, Q, and R.

b. Find a unit vector perpendicular to plane PQR.

15. $P(1, -1, 2)$, $Q(2, 0, -1)$, $R(0, 2, 1)$

16. $P(1, 1, 1)$, $Q(2, 1, 3)$, $R(3, -1, 1)$

17. $P(2, -2, 1)$, $Q(3, -1, 2)$, $R(3, -1, 1)$

18. $P(-2, 2, 0)$, $Q(0, 1, -1)$, $R(-1, 2, -2)$

Triple Scalar Products

In Exercises 19–22, verify that $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) \cdot \mathbf{u} = (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and find the volume of the parallelepiped (box) determined by $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$.

	u	v	w
19.	$2\mathbf{i}$	$2\mathbf{j}$	$2\mathbf{k}$
20.	$\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$	$2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$	$-\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
21.	$2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$	$2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$	$\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{k}$
22.	$\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$	$-\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$	$2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$

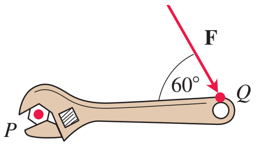
Theory and Examples

23. Parallel and perpendicular vectors Let $\mathbf{u} = 5\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{w} = -15\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$. Which vectors, if any, are **(a)** perpendicular? **(b)** Parallel? Give reasons for your answers.

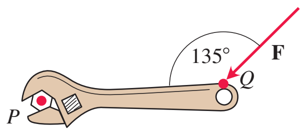
24. Parallel and perpendicular vectors Let $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{r} = -(\pi/2)\mathbf{i} - \pi\mathbf{j} + (\pi/2)\mathbf{k}$. Which vectors, if any, are **(a)** perpendicular? **(b)** Parallel? Give reasons for your answers.

In Exercises 25 and 26, find the magnitude of the torque exerted by $\mathbf{F}$ on the bolt at P if $|\overrightarrow{PQ}| = 8$ in. and $|\mathbf{F}| = 30$ lb. Answer in foot-pounds.

25.



26.



27. Which of the following are *always true*, and which are *not always true*? Give reasons for your answers.

a. $|\mathbf{u}| = \sqrt{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u}}$

b. $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{u}|$

c. $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0} \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$

d. $\mathbf{u} \times (-\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$

e. $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}$

f. $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$

g. $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$

h. $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$

28. Which of the following are *always true*, and which are *not always true*? Give reasons for your answers.

a. $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$

b. $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = -(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u})$

c. $(-\mathbf{u}) \times \mathbf{v} = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

d. $(c\mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot (c\mathbf{v}) = c(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})$ (any number c)

e. $c(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = (c\mathbf{u}) \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \times (c\mathbf{v})$ (any number c)

f. $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{u}|^2$

g. $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0$

h. $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

29. Given nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$, use dot product and cross product notation, as appropriate, to describe the following.

a. The vector projection of $\mathbf{u}$ onto $\mathbf{v}$

b. A vector orthogonal to $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$

c. A vector orthogonal to $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$

d. The volume of the parallelepiped determined by $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$

e. A vector orthogonal to $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$

f. A vector of length $|\mathbf{u}|$ in the direction of $\mathbf{v}$

30. Compute $(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}) \times \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j})$. What can you conclude about the associativity of the cross product?

31. Let $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ be vectors. Which of the following make sense, and which do not? Give reasons for your answers.

a. $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}$

b. $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w})$

c. $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$

d. $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w})$

32. Cross products of three vectors Show that except in degenerate cases, $(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \times \mathbf{w}$ lies in the plane of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, whereas $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})$ lies in the plane of $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$. What *are* the degenerate cases?

33. Cancelation in cross products If $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then does $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$? Give reasons for your answer.

34. Double cancelation If $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{0}$ and if $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$, then does $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$? Give reasons for your answer.

Area of a Parallelogram

Find the areas of the parallelograms whose vertices are given in Exercises 35–40.

35. $A(1, 0)$, $B(0, 1)$, $C(-1, 0)$, $D(0, -1)$

36. $A(0, 0)$, $B(7, 3)$, $C(9, 8)$, $D(2, 5)$

37. $A(-1, 2)$, $B(2, 0)$, $C(7, 1)$, $D(4, 3)$

38. $A(-6, 0)$, $B(1, -4)$, $C(3, 1)$, $D(-4, 5)$

39. $A(0, 0, 0)$, $B(3, 2, 4)$, $C(5, 1, 4)$, $D(2, -1, 0)$

40. $A(1, 0, -1)$, $B(1, 7, 2)$, $C(2, 4, -1)$, $D(0, 3, 2)$

Area of a Triangle

Find the areas of the triangles whose vertices are given in Exercises 41–47.

41. $A(0, 0)$, $B(-2, 3)$, $C(3, 1)$

42. $A(-1, -1)$, $B(3, 3)$, $C(2, 1)$

43. $A(-5, 3)$, $B(1, -2)$, $C(6, -2)$

44. $A(-6, 0)$, $B(10, -5)$, $C(-2, 4)$

45. $A(1, 0, 0)$, $B(0, 2, 0)$, $C(0, 0, -1)$

46. $A(0, 0, 0)$, $B(-1, 1, -1)$, $C(3, 0, 3)$

47. $A(1, -1, 1)$, $B(0, 1, 1)$, $C(1, 0, -1)$

48. Find the volume of a parallelepiped if four of its eight vertices are $A(0, 0, 0)$, $B(1, 2, 0)$, $C(0, -3, 2)$, and $D(3, -4, 5)$.

49. Triangle area Find a 2×2 determinant formula for the area of the triangle in the xy-plane with vertices at $(0, 0)$, (a_1, a_2), and (b_1, b_2). Explain your work.

50. Triangle area Find a concise 3×3 determinant formula that gives the area of a triangle in the xy-plane having vertices (a_1, a_2), (b_1, b_2), and (c_1, c_2).

12.5 Lines and Planes in Space

This section shows how to use scalar and vector products to write equations for lines, line segments, and planes in space. We will use these representations throughout the rest of the book in studying the calculus of curves and surfaces in space.

Lines and Line Segments in Space

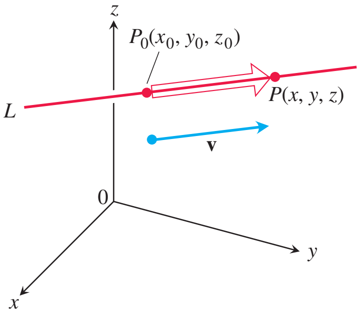


FIGURE 12.35 A point P lies on L through P_0 parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ if and only if $\overrightarrow{P_0P}$ is a scalar multiple of $\mathbf{v}$.

In the plane, a line is determined by a point and a number giving the slope of the line. In space a line is determined by a point and a *vector* giving the direction of the line.

Suppose that L is a line in space passing through a point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ parallel to a vector $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$. Then L is the set of all points $P(x, y, z)$ for which $\overrightarrow{P_0P}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ (Figure 12.35). Thus, $\overrightarrow{P_0P} = t\mathbf{v}$ for some scalar parameter t. The value of t depends on the location of the point P along the line, and the domain of t is $(-\infty, \infty)$. The expanded form of the equation $\overrightarrow{P_0P} = t\mathbf{v}$ is

$$(x - x_0)\mathbf{i} + (y - y_0)\mathbf{j} + (z - z_0)\mathbf{k} = t(v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}),$$

which can be rewritten as

$$x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k} = x_0\mathbf{i} + y_0\mathbf{j} + z_0\mathbf{k} + t(v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}). \qquad (1)$$

If $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is the position vector of a point $P(x, y, z)$ on the line and $\mathbf{r}_0$ is the position vector of the point $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$, then Equation (1) gives the following vector form for the equation of a line in space.

Vector Equation for a Line

A vector equation for the line L through $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ is

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + t\mathbf{v}, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty, \qquad (2)$$

where $\mathbf{r}$ is the position vector of a point $P(x, y, z)$ on L and $\mathbf{r}_0$ is the position vector of $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$.

Equating the corresponding components of the two sides of Equation (1) gives three scalar equations involving the parameter t:

$$x = x_0 + tv_1, \qquad y = y_0 + tv_2, \qquad z = z_0 + tv_3.$$

These equations give us the standard parametrization of the line for the parameter interval $-\infty < t < \infty$.

Parametric Equations for a Line

The standard parametrization of the line through $P_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ parallel to $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$ is

$$x = x_0 + tv_1, \quad y = y_0 + tv_2, \quad z = z_0 + tv_3, \quad -\infty < t < \infty \qquad (3)$$

Complex Number

Definition: -

Complex numbers are some of the most general numbers used in algebra. Any number that can be expressed in the form $\boldsymbol{z = a + bi}$ or $\boldsymbol{z = x + yi}$, where $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$ are real numbers and $\boldsymbol{i} = \sqrt{\boldsymbol{-1}}$ is a complex number. Complex number can be thought of as a two-dimensional vector $(\boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{b})$, where $\boldsymbol{a}$ is the ***real part*** and $\boldsymbol{b}$ is the ***imaginary part***.

NOTES: -

1. The set of real no. is denoted by $\mathbb{R}$

   The set of complex no. is denoted by $\mathbb{C}$
2. The real part of Z denoted by $Re(z)$

   The imaginary part of Z denoted by $Im(z)$

Complex number algebra

A number is real when the coefficient of $\boldsymbol{i}$ is zero and is imaginary when real part is zero.

For example

$\boldsymbol{Z = 3 + 4i}$

$\boldsymbol{3 + 0i = 3}$ **is real,**

$\boldsymbol{0 + 4i = 4i}$ **is imaginary**

Basic Operations

1. ***Addition and subtraction:***

Addition of complex numbers is defined by separately adding real and imaginary parts.

If $\boldsymbol{z = a + bi}$, $\boldsymbol{w = c + di}$, then

$$\boldsymbol{z + w = (a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i}$$

Similarly for subtraction:

$$\boldsymbol{z - w = (a + bi) - (c + di) = (a - c) + (b - d)i}$$

Example: -

Express each of the following in term of $\boldsymbol{x + yi}$***.***

a. $(\mathbf{3+5}\boldsymbol{i})+(\mathbf{2-3}\boldsymbol{i})$

b. $(\mathbf{3+5}\boldsymbol{i})+\mathbf{6}$

c. $\mathbf{7}\boldsymbol{i}-(\mathbf{4+5}\boldsymbol{i})$

Solution

a. $(3 + 5i)+(2-3i)=(3+2)+(5-3)i=5+2i$

b. $(3+5i)+6=(3+6)+5i=9+5i$

c. $7i-(4+5i)=-4+(7-5)i=-4+2i$

2. Multiplication

Multiplication is straightforward provided remember that $\boldsymbol{i^2=-1}$.

So, if: $\boldsymbol{z=a+bi}$ and $\boldsymbol{w=c+di}$, then:

$$\boldsymbol{z*w=(a+bi)*(c+di)=(ac-bd)+(ad + cb)i}$$

<u>Example: -</u>

Simply the following in the form $x+yi$.

$(\mathbf{2-7}\boldsymbol{i})*(\mathbf{3+4}\boldsymbol{i})$

Solution

$(\mathbf{2-7}\boldsymbol{i})*(\mathbf{3+4}\boldsymbol{i})=6+8i-21i+28=34-13i$

<u>NOTES: -</u>

$\boldsymbol{i=\sqrt{-1}}$

$\boldsymbol{i^2=-1}$

$\boldsymbol{i^3=i.i^2=-i}$

$\boldsymbol{i^4=1}$

$\boldsymbol{i^5=i^4.i=i}$

3. *Division*

The complex conjugate of a complex number is obtained by changing the sign of the imaginary part. So, if $\boldsymbol{z= a+bi}$, its **complex conjugate** $\bar{z}$, is defined by: $\boldsymbol{\bar{z}=a-bi}$**.** Any complex number $\boldsymbol{a+bi}$ has a complex conjugate $a-bi$.

<u>Example: -</u>

Simplify the following expression in the form $x+yi$.

a. $\frac{3}{1+i}$

b. $\frac{4+7i}{2+5i}$

c. $\frac{5}{-3+4i}$

Solution

a. $\frac{3}{1+i} = \frac{3}{1+i} * \frac{1-i}{1-i} = \frac{3-3i}{1+1} = \frac{3-3i}{2} = \frac{3}{2} - \frac{3}{2}i$

b. $\frac{4+7i}{2+5i} = \frac{4+7i}{2+5i} * \frac{2-5i}{2-5i} = \frac{43-6i}{4+25} = \frac{43-6i}{29} = \frac{43}{29} - \frac{6}{29}i$

c. $\frac{5}{-3+4i} = \frac{5}{-3+4i} * \frac{-3-4i}{-3-4i} = \frac{5(-3-4i)}{(-3+4i)(-3-4i)} = \frac{-15-20i}{9+16} = \frac{-15-20i}{25} = -\frac{3}{5} - \frac{4}{5}i$

NOTES: -

1. If $z = 0$, then $\bar{z} = 0$
2. If **z** is real part only, then $\bar{z} = z$
3. If z is imaginary only, then $\bar{z} = -z$

Polar Form of Complex Number

The relation between the complex no. and the polar coordinates are given by:

$x = r\, cos\theta$

$y = r\, sin\theta$

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$

$tan\theta = \frac{y}{x} \rightarrow \theta = tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$

$$z = r(cos\theta + i\, sin\theta)$$

In general

$$z^n = r^n(cos\, n\theta + i\, sin\, n\theta)$$

Example: -

Let $z = 1 + i$*, put it in a polar form.*

Solution

$x = 1$

$y = 1$

$r = \sqrt{(1)^2 + (1)^2} = \sqrt{2}$

$\theta = tan^{-1}\frac{1}{1} = 45$

$$z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$$

$z = \sqrt{2}(cos45 + i\ sin45)$

Modulus & Argument

The number Z is called **the modulus of Z** and is denoted by $|z|$.

$$|z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

and the number θ is called **the argument of Z** and is denoted by $arg\ Z$

$$arg\ Z = \theta$$

<u>Examples: -</u>

Find the modulus & argument to:

1) $1 + i$

Solution

$|z| = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2}$

$tan\theta = \frac{1}{1} \to \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$arg\ Z = \frac{\pi}{4}$

2) $1 + \sqrt{3}i$

Solution

$|z| = \sqrt{1^2 + \sqrt{3}^2} = 2$

$tan\theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} \to \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

$arg\ Z = \frac{\pi}{3}$

3) $(1 + i)^2$

Solution

$(1 + i)^2 = 1 + 2i - 1 = 2i$

$|z| = \sqrt{0 + 2^2} = 2$

$tan\theta = \frac{2}{0} = \infty \to \theta = \frac{\pi}{2}\ arg\ Z = \frac{\pi}{2}$

Euler Formula

Does a relation connect the Cartesian coordinates plane to the polar plane in complex numbers

$$\boldsymbol{e^{i\theta} = cos\theta + i\, sin\theta}$$

If $z = x + yi = r(cos\theta + i\,sin\theta)$, then $z = re^{i\theta}$

NOTES: -

1. $e^{i\theta_1}.e^{i\theta_2} = e^{i(\theta_1+\theta_2)}$
2. $\frac{e^{i\theta_1}}{e^{i\theta_2}} = e^{i(\theta_1-\theta_2)}$

Power of Z

If $\boldsymbol{z = re^{i\theta}}$, then for any integer number

$$\boldsymbol{z^n = (re^{i\theta})^n = r^n e^{in\theta}}$$

Examples: -

Find the value of complex number

1) $(3 + \sqrt{3}\mathrm{i})^{100}$

Solution

$\mathrm{x} = 3, \quad \mathrm{y} = \sqrt{3}, \quad \mathrm{n} = 100$

$\mathrm{r} = \sqrt{\mathrm{x}^2 + \mathrm{y}^2} = \sqrt{3^2 + \sqrt{3}^2} = \sqrt{12}$

$\theta = tan^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = 30$

$z^n = r^n(\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta)$

$= \left(\sqrt{12}\right)^{100}(cos(100 * 30) + i\, sin(100 * 30))$

$= (3.46)^{100}(-0.5 + i\;0.8)$

2) $\mathrm{Z} = 2^2$

Solution

$\mathrm{x} = 2, \quad \mathrm{y} = 0, \quad \mathrm{n} = 2$

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = \sqrt{2^2 + 0} = 2$

$\theta = tan^{-1}\frac{0}{2} = 0$

$z^n = r^n(\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta)$

$= 2^2(cos(2 * 0) + i\, sin(2 * 0))$

$= 4(1 + i\,0) = 4$

3) $z = -\sqrt{3} - i$, **find** $\sqrt[4]{z}$

Sol.

$\sqrt[4]{z} = z^{\frac{1}{4}} = (-\sqrt{3} - i)^{\frac{1}{4}}$

$x = -\sqrt{3}, \quad y = -1, \quad n = \frac{1}{4}$

$r = \sqrt{(-\sqrt{3})^2 + (-1)^2} = 2$

$\theta = tan^{-1}\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{6}\pi$

$z^n = r^n(\cos n\theta + i\sin n\theta)$

$= 2^{\frac{1}{4}}(cos(\frac{1}{4} * \frac{1}{6}\pi) + i\,sin(\frac{1}{4} * \frac{1}{6}\pi))$

$= 2^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(cos(\frac{1}{24}\pi) + i\,sin(\frac{1}{24}\pi)\right)$

THEOREM :let Z , W be complex no. then : -

1. $\overline{Z \pm W} = \overline{Z} \pm \overline{W}$
2. $\overline{ZW} = \overline{Z}\,\overline{W}$
3. $\overline{Z/W} = \overline{Z}/\overline{W} \quad ,W \neq 0$
4. $\overline{\overline{Z}} = Z$
5. $|ZW| = |Z||W|$
6. $|Z/W| = |Z|/|W| \quad , W \neq 0$
7. $Z\overline{Z} = |Z|^2$
8. $|Z| = |-Z| = |\overline{Z}|$
9. $\arg ZW = \arg Z + \arg W$
10. $\arg \overline{Z} = -\arg Z$
11. $\arg Z/W = \arg Z - \arg W \quad ,W \neq 0$
12. $\arg Z^n = n \arg Z$

HOMEWORK

a) Find the value of complex numbers

1. $(3 + 3i)^5$
2. $(-4 + 4i)^{11}$
3. $(4 + 4\sqrt{3}i)^9$

b) Find the modulus & argument of:

1) $-1 - i$, 2) i, 3) 1

Root of Complex Number

1) Let $w = Z^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{Z}$ ... (1)

So that w is a solution of all equations

$w^n = Z$ ... (2)

Then,

$$\boldsymbol{w_k = r^{\frac{1}{n}}\left(cos\frac{\theta + 2\pi k}{n} + i\,sin\frac{\theta + 2\pi k}{n}\right) \ldots 1}$$

2) If $\boldsymbol{z = re^{i\theta}}$ is a complex number different from zero and $\boldsymbol{n}$ is a positive integer, then there are precisely $\boldsymbol{n}$ different complex numbers, that are nth roots of z given by:

$$\boldsymbol{\sqrt[n]{re^{i\theta}} = \sqrt[n]{r}\; e^{i\left(\frac{\theta}{n} + k\frac{2\pi}{n}\right)} \ldots 2}$$

<u>Examples:</u>

1) Find the three cubic roots of 1

Sol.

$z = 1 + 0i$

$x = 1, y = 0$

$r = \sqrt{(1)^2 + 0^2} = 1$

$tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$

$\theta = tan^{-1}0 = 0$

$w_k = r^{\frac{1}{n}}\left(cos\frac{\theta+2\pi k}{n} + i\,sin\frac{\theta+2\pi k}{n}\right),\; k = 1,2,3,\ldots,n$

$$w_k = (1)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(cos\frac{0 + 2\pi k}{3} + i\,sin\frac{0 + 2\pi k}{3}\right),$$

at k = 0

$w_0 = (1)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(cos\frac{0+2\pi k}{3} + i\,sin\frac{0+2\pi k}{3}\right) = 1(cos\,0 + i\,sin\,0) = 1$

at k = 1

$w_1 = (1)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(cos\frac{0+2\pi(1)}{3} + i\,sin\frac{0+2\pi(1)}{3}\right) = 1\left(cos\frac{2\pi}{3} + i\,sin\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -0.5 + 0.866\,i$

at $\boldsymbol{k = 2}$

$w_2 = (1)^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(cos\frac{0+2\pi(2)}{3} + i\,sin\frac{0+2\pi(2)}{3}\right) = 1\left(\cos\frac{4\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = -0.5 - 0.866\,i$

2) Find the four forth roots of (-16).

Sol

$z = -16$

$r = \sqrt{(-16)^2 + 0^2} = 16$

$tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$

$\theta = tan^{-1}\frac{0}{-16} = \pi \; or \; \theta = 0$

$\sqrt[4]{-16} = \sqrt[4]{16}\, e^{i\left(\frac{\pi}{4}+k\frac{2\pi}{4}\right)} = 2e^{i\left(\frac{\pi}{4}+k\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}, k = 0,1,2,3$

$at\; \boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{0}$

first root $w_0 = 2e^{i\frac{\pi}{4}} = 2\left(cos\frac{\pi}{4} + i\, sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}i$

$at\; \boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{1}$

second root $w_1 = 2e^{i\frac{3\pi}{4}} = -\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}i$

$at\; \boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{2}$

third root $w_2 = 2e^{i\frac{5\pi}{4}} = -\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{2}i$

$at\; \boldsymbol{k} = \boldsymbol{3}$

fourth root $w_3 = 2e^{i\frac{7\pi}{4}} = \sqrt{2} - \sqrt{2}i$

Function of Complex Variable

A complex variable $\boldsymbol{w}$ is said to be function of the complex variable $\boldsymbol{Z}$

If $\boldsymbol{w} = \boldsymbol{u} + \boldsymbol{iv}$ and $\boldsymbol{z} = \boldsymbol{x} + \boldsymbol{yi}$, then $\boldsymbol{u}$ and $\boldsymbol{v}$ both are a function of x, y, so

We can express $u(x, y)$ and $v(x, y)$ as:

$$\boldsymbol{w} = \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{z}) = \boldsymbol{u}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y}) + \boldsymbol{iv}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{y})$$

When x and y are real numbers.

<u>Examples:</u>

1) Let $f(z) = z^2 + 3z$, find (w).

Sol

$w = f(z) = z^2 + 3z$

$= (x + yi)^2 + 3(x + yi)$

$= x^2 + 2xyi - y^2 + 3x + 3yi$

$w = x^2 - y^2 + 3x + yi(2x + 3)$

$w = u + iv$

$u = x^2 - y^2 + 3x$ $\quad Re(w)$

$v = \ yi(2x + 3)$ $\quad$ Im(w)

2) *Find u, v if $f(z) = \frac{1}{z-1}$.*

Solution

$w = f(z) = \frac{1}{z-1} = \frac{1}{(x+yi)-1}$

$$= \frac{1}{(x-1)+yi} = \frac{1}{(x-1)+yi} * \frac{(x-1)-yi}{(x-1)-yi}$$

$$= \frac{(x-1)-yi}{(x-1)^2+y^2} = \frac{(x-1)}{(x-1)^2+y^2} - i\,\frac{y}{(x-1)^2+y^2}$$